

THE
Famous and Renowned
HISTORY
OF
Amadis de Gaule

CONTAINING
The Heroick Deeds of Armes,
and strange Adventures, aswell of *Amadis* him-
self, as of *Perion* his Son, and *Lisuart* of *Greece*, Son
to *Esplandian* Emperor of *Constantinople*.
Wherein is shewed the Wars of the Christians
against the Turks; the death of *Armato* King of
Turkie, and the strange death of *Melea* the Enchantress,
the love of *Perion de Gaule*, otherwise the Knight of the
Sphere, to *Gricilerea*, Daughter to the Emperor of
Trebisond, and of *Lisuart* of *Greece*, sometimes called
the Knight of the true Cross to *Onolorea*, ano-
ther Daughter to the Emperor of
TREBISOND.
Together with the Acts and strange Adventures of many other
great Lords and Princes, aswell Christians as Pagans;
Being the sixt Part never before Published.

Translated out of French into English, by Francis Kirkman.

LONDON, Printed by *Jane Bell*, and are to be sold.



The Translators
E P I S T L E
T O T H E
R E A D E R.

Here published this ancient History (Gen-
tle Reader) partly, at the intreatie of some
of my familiar friends, and partly, through
the desire which I had to put to light, so
worthy a worke. There hath been as yet, but
five parts thereof published in English, although, there
are to the number of twentie four parts thereof in most
of other Languages. Wherefore thinking it in my ap-
prehension, as well worthy the translation as any other
Histories of the like nature, I did so far presume upon
my owne abilities (and to benefit my selfe in the Lan-
guage) as to begin the Translation thereof: Yet I had not
the least intent to have it come into the publique view.
But being (as I have said) instigated and earnestly per-
swaded thereunto, I have now presumed to publish the
same. Not having so much confidence of my owne weak
abilities,

A 2

The Epistle to the Reader.

abilities, as to imagine, that it will be accepted of and liked by all, but rather hoping that some will looke on it, and value it not according to the worth, but the good will of the writer. As for such, as either rashly condemne without judgment, or lavishly dislike without advice: I esteeme them like feathers, soone disperst with every blast, accounting their discontent my content, not caring to please every Momus.

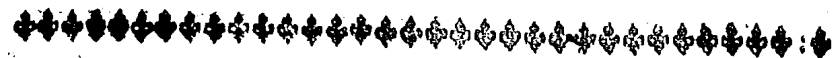
All that I desire is, to have the good opinion of the well-affected to Learning, and that I hope (Gentle Reader) you will favourably afford me; which if you doe, I shall account my self much obliged to you, my labor and time well imployed, and my selfe (by my future engagements to my ability, in somewhat of the like nature, or some more worthy work) bound to be alwayes ready, and willing to requite your kindness.

But if I shall find the contrary, (and that I too boldly building on your courtesies, be wounded with repentance, and brought to despaire) then you will render me altogether uselesse, not daring to venture any more being blasted in my first designs. Thus hoping that you will peruse this (as an earnest of my further travailes) with so favourable an aspect, as that I may be emboldned to proceed in the following parts of this History,

I rest

Yours as you like him

Francis Kirkman Jun.



To the ingenious Translator F. K.

Our Love is well, our labour ill plac'd, since
Thou canst not stand in need of our defence,
Our weak Pygmie-defence, in whose just right
So many valiant Knights are proud to fight.
Champions thou canst not want, who writes their glory
Theyr bound in honor to protect thy Story.
Come hither then yee Heroes of our age
Who have this ten years acted on Wars stage,
Compare your deeds with ours, and blushing see
Your selves out done in feats of Chivalrie.
What ist, you ever did, deserves a name
In competition set with Perions fame?
Great Perion, who his Prowesse doth display
Far and as freely as Hyperion day.
By which our Perions deserts appear
Great as Hyperions, for the golden Sphere.
In the next Orbe of Worthies Lifestart hight,
Vaillides and Quedragant shine bright:
But what surpasseth all, and's above words
There's no oppression followes our Knights swords.
We know no plunder we, no itch of Sway,
Our aime is onely honor, and the day.
We for oppressed ones hold forth a shield,
Gyants to us are Pygmies and must yield.
But 'tis in vaine particulars to write
Concerning this adventure, or that fight:
This onely I will say, they doubly live,
One life their sword, a new thy pen doth give.
In one atchievment thou hast all out-gone
Even Amadis himself, and his bold son:
For Amadis, Brittain's King, so long a Gasse
Thou hast to Brittain brought from Language-thrall.
Who then dislikes thy Book, we have a hull
To ship away to th' land of — such a gull.

Thomas Snelling Gent:



Upon the Translation of the sixth Book of
 AMADIS de GAULE, performed
 by his loving friend F. K.

AS in a Mirror here you may behold
 Successefull Virtue, joyfully to hold
 A Crowne of Laurell; whilst dejected Vice
 Vanquish't and traml'd on, receives the price
 Of feigned pleasures; lively setting forth
 The latter's vileness, and the former's worth.
 Both thus rewarded, we are hereby taught
 To imitate the good, t'avoid the naught.
 This Paragon, which France of yore did boast,
 Was no where to be found, but in her coast,
 Which *France* did so long time monopolize,
 Is here presented (Readers) to your eyes
 In English dresse, which if he chance to finde
 Your censure Candid, eetertainment kinde,
 May thereby be provoked to desire,
 Her sisters presence in the same attire.
 And now, Ingenious *French*, I must be bold
 (Avoiding adulation) to unfold
 In part thy merits, whose industrious paines
 Yield's us such gainefull pleasure, pleasing gaines.
 This *Gallick* Lady is by thy Translation
 So neatly deck't, and drest in the English fashion
 That (though thy unripe years might thee excuse,
 For what erratas *Momus* may infuse
 Into the (Reader's minde) yet dost not thou
 Need such defence against the lowring brow
 Of Carping Criticks, then prethee English all
 The rest o'th' story of *Amadis de Gaule*.

Your loving Friend

J. W.



<i>Know Readers all,</i>	<i>Of the sixth Book of Amadis</i>
<i>That to my loving brother,</i>	<i>de Gaule.</i>
<i>And unto none other,</i>	<i>I doe indite</i>
<i>On this Translation of his,</i>	<i>These verses which I write.</i>

COME all yee Herce's of our warlike age
 And learn of *Perion*, and of *Lisuart* flour,
 Who soone will teach you how for to engage
 With all your Foes, and put them to the rout.
 Here you may read of fights and most strange news,
 As wars between great Emperors, Kings, and Sultanes:
 How Christians alwayes vanquish't Turks and Jews,
 And streams of bloud did run like living fountaines.
 Here you may see the deeds and famous Acts
 Of Chivalrie perform'd by worthy Knights,
 As good as e're wore Armour on their backs,
 Or e're were seen in mortall cruell fights.
 Here you may read of many most strange things,
 As th'ile of Apes, and Apes that Sailors were,
 And sometimes carried Knights, and Queens, and Kings
 In their great Barque, which was a thing most rare.
 Here you may read of *Lisuart's* gallant fame
 And *Perion's*, who by none surpassed were
 In Prowesse, Wisdome, Vertue and in name, (Sphere:
 And oft was known by the name of th'Knight of th'
 Here you may read of Ladies of great beautie
 Who courted were by many valiant Knights,
 And you may read of some who d'd their duty
 In many warlike deeds, and cruell fights.
 Great prayses you deserve for your Translation,
 And bringing of such famous deeds to light,
 It having done so much good to our Nation,
 Which now accusom'd is so oft to fight.

Your Loving Brother

Robert Kirkman.

To my loving friend Francis Kirkman.

The good Success | Of Translations
And usefulness | In all Nations.

BE speak esteeme of this book made compleat,
Not Cobler like, but like Translator neat,
Heroick hearts come read in polish't words
Puissant actions of old Warlike Swords,
And learn for ever how to make your names
Glitter as Star-light, or Sol's brighter flames :
Come *Cupid-smitten* Carbonado'd hearts,
And fresh your selves with amorous pleasant parts.
The work was great delight to th'Authors minde,
As great delight the Readers all may finde.
The words are well exchang'd, not put to rout,
Nor shall you finde at all their braines dash't out.
From all true Lovers of desert and Learning
Acceptance of the work's the workman's earning:
Then set aside all doubting and disdain,
And buy out right this blossome brave amaine.
Proceed young *Kirkman*, thus improve thy Reason,
And publish rare Antiquities in season,
And so become an happie Constellation
To poure a strong influence on our Nation.

Chi parla semina } The speaker sows.
Chi tace raccoglie } The hearer reaps.

La volonta supplisce } The good will doth supply
a la faculta } want of Ability.

Yours
Thomas Heath.



THE
SIXTH BOOKE

OF

Amadis de Gaule;

Which largely treateth of the great
Deeds of Armes, and strange Adventures,
as well of *PERION* his Son, as of *LISVART*
of Greece, son to *Esplandian*, Emperor of
CONSTANTINOPLE.

CHAP. I.

*Now PERION of Gaule, second son of Amadis de-
parted from London, with seven other young Princes,
hoping to goe into Ireland, to receive the order of
Knighthood, at the hands of the old King Cildadan,
and of that which happened to them.*



HE newes of these Princes and Lords, La-
dies and Gentlewomen, enchanted in the
firme Island, as you have heard, was soon
known by little *PERION* of Gaule, son of
Amadis, who had been left by his father in
Great Britaine, under the Government of
good old *Arban*, King of *Norwales*. This young Prince
being then about the age of twelve or thirteen years, had

a resolution in himselfe, to receive the Order of Knight-hood at the hands of his brother the Emperor *Esplandian*, and of none other: but seeing himself frustrated of his purpose, he lingered until the fourth yeare following: when two of the sons of *Don Florestan* King of *Sardinia* came to visit him, at *London*. The one whereof was called *Florestan*, as his father, the other *Parmenir*, in whose company were also *Vaillides* son to *Don Bruneo*, King of *Ara-vigne*, *Languines* and *Galvanes*, children of *Agries* King of *Scotland*, *Abies* of *Ireland* son to King *Cildadan*, and *Quedragant* Lord of *Sansuegue*, who were departed from their severall Countries, hoping to be made Knights by the same hand, of whom *Perion* should obtaine this honour. The young Prince received him as welcome; as the nearnesse of their kindred rendred him affectionate towards them; especially having heard occasion of their long voyage. To satisfie which desire, they resolved to take their journey to *Ireland*, towards King *Cildadan*, there being at that time no Prince more worthy to supply the place of the Emperor *Esplandian* in his absence. *Perion* having a desire, so soone as he should have the meanes, to bear Armes, and follow strange adventures, and imitate his father in Prowesse and Chivalrie: wherefore desiring to have *Irquian* the son of *Gandelin* for his Squire, he dispatched a Gentleman of his towards *Gandales* (who at that time lived in the Castles of *Archelaus* which *Amadis* had given him) earnestly intreating him to send *Irquian* to him, wherewith *Gandales* was content. He therefore being arived, and these young Princes having provided all things necessarie for their journey, taking their leave of King *Arban*, they went strait to the Port of *Fennuse*, where they imbarqued: And as they were on the Sea, they discovered a Barque with foure oares, green as emeralds, wherewith foure Apes did row: and there was with them a very faire Damself, costely adorned. These Barques followed one another so closely, that they were joined and landed together. And as *Perion* and those of

his

his Company were ready to mount on horse-back, the strange Damself approached neer to them; carrying on her neck a sword excellently garnished, and in her hand a black shield, in the middle whereof was painted a golden Sphere. Shee addressed her selfe to *Perion*, and kneeling on the ground, spake thus. Gentle sir, God forbid that I should ever part from your feet untill you have granted me the Boon which I shall aske you. *Perion* whom shee much pleased, readily answered, Aske it then, and you shall not be refused. Truly said she, I hoped for no lesse. Shee rising from the ground, took him apart, and they talked so long in walking together, that they came neer to the barque where the Apes were: into which the Damself prayed him to enter alone. Then *Perion* knew very well, that by too rashly promising he had lost his company: And although he was as much troubled at it, as at any thing that could happen to him whatsoever, even seeing himselfe frustrated of his purpose, and hindered from his voyage into *Ireland*: neverthelesse (knowing that his honour would be questioned, if he did not accomplish that, in which he had voluntarily obliged himselfe) he passed on, and called his Companions, to whom he declared, that which the Damself had requested him, and the cause wherefore he followed her, wherefore he intreated them earnestly to excuse him. You may easily judge whether they were well pleased: But seeing that they could not remedie it, they recommended him to the keeping of our Lord, assuring him that so soon as they had received Knighthood, they would put themselves in search of him, wheresoever he should be. They had hardly spoken these words when the Apes began to row, and the winde fate so faire, that in a small time they were far from Land, and they lost the sight of him. So let us leave him to the Seas at the pleasure of fortune, and returne to the others, being resolved to persue their enterprize: And therefore they went to the Court of old *Cildadan*, who knowing of their arrival, honorably received them, and af-

ter they had sojourned a small time in his Countie, he gave them the order. Then they tooke leave of him, and entering into their ship, they set saile to Constantinople, where they found *Lisuart*, son to *Esplanadian*, who was then esteemed the most faire and accomplished Gentleman in the world. The old Emperour (who by reason of the absence of his Children had left his solitary life, & taken upon him the Government of *Ibérie*) knowing that they were arrived at the Port, went downe and welcomed them: add from thence conducted them into his Pallace, where he and young *Lisuart* feasted them for the space of twelve dayes: who, having understood the losse of his Uncle *Perion*, and the enterprise of these new Knights which was to go seek him where ever he was, he resolved to keepe them company. And for that purpose, the thirteenth day afterwards, as the Emperour arose from Table, he came and cast himselfe upon his knees before him, humbly entreating him to grant him one boon. The good man having the teares in his eyes, tooke him up, and granted him whatsoever he would. Sir said he, I have understood by these Knights, that my Uncle *Perion* of *Gaule*, hath been lead by a strange Damsell, and no man knows whither: May it therefore please you not to be displeased, if I goe my selfe to seeke him; for I never had a desire to receive Knight-hood of any other then of him: being sure that of a better I cannot attain to such honour, seeing that he is the Son of King *Amsdis*, Father to my Father, who hath surpassed all others in great prowesse and wisdom. My Son, answered the Emperour, this parting will be very grievous to me; for your presence gave my old yeares some comfort in the absence and losse of your Parents. Neverthelesse seeing that I have agreed to your demands, I am willing that your will be accomplished. At this time *Lisuart* might be about the age of seventeen yeares: he was so great, and well formed, that one would have esteemed him more then twenty. He therefore having the Reynes on his owne neck, to doe what seemed him good, he endeavoured in all diligence to provide

vide and furnish three great ships, into the one of which he entred, accompanied with *Florestan*, *Parmenir* his Brother, and *Gulnarez* brother of *Languiues*: in the other *Vaillantes* and *Quadrages*; and in the third *Languiues* with *Abis*. Then having taken leave of the Emperour, they commanded to weigh anchors, and hoise the sailes; and sayling in the maine Sea, in an hours space they lost the sight of the great City. So we will returne to *Perion*, and the fortunes which he had, we will leave the others alone untill we shall have more leasure.

CHAP. II.

How the Damsell Conducted Perion of Gaule to a place where he received the Order of Knight-hood, and of that which hapned to him.



Ne week and more sailed *Perion* in the barque of the Apes with the strange Damsell; and the seventh day following, they drew neare to the shore of the fairest Country that could be possible. There they tooke Port, and soon after the Damsell, named *Alquesa* took out of her Coffers a black Harnesse, embelish't with the like Spheres as those of the Shreild which she carried; then she said to *Perion*: Gentle sir, It is meet before we passe further, that you arme your self with these Armes: for behold the place where you must begin the accomplishment of the promise which you have made me. And what wil a shield & armes profit me said *Perion*, I not being a Knight? You shal be made a Knight quoth she when God & the time shal permit, wherefore do not delay. Which he agreed to, in such sort that he put on the Coat of Maile, and the rest of the Harnesse except the Helmet, which she took between her armes: and issuing out of the barque, they began to goe up into the Island, so long that

they came into a great plain, where *Perion* asked her in what place they were; but she answered him no otherwise but that he should know hereafter. And so discoursing, they saw a great City, the circuit whereof seemed in appearance to containe more then three miles: and the nearer they came to it, the more lofty the place seemed to *Perion*, were it in highness of Walls, strength of Towers, or great Bulwarks. And hee would very willingly have pressed his guide to tell him the name of the place, but her former answer contradicted his desire to enquire further: in such sort that he held his peace until they entred into it. Then he very well knew that the excellency of it without, was nothing comparable to that which he saw within, as well in faire Houses, as golden Pallaces; as well of people, as of magnificent Temples, Colosso's and things of antiquity that he knew not what to thinke. Which the Damsell knowing, she said to him: Now it is good for your profit and honour, that you speake not one word to any man who shall talke to you, before that I commanded *Perion*, I will hold my peace then, seeing that it is your pleasure. And so discoursing, they came to the entrance of a Pallace, being the Principall of them all, as it might easily be perceived: before which many Knights and other persons walked, who seeing *Perion* and the strange Damsell goe up the steps, followed them to see what adventure it might be. And entring into a very great Hall hung with Tappetry, *Perion* perceived under a Canopie of cloth of Gold an honourable old man, having on his head an Emperours Crowne; and near him many Kings, Dukes, Earls and Barons, who all did greatly honour and reverence him; and towards whom *Alquesa* (holding *Perion* by the hand) approached; and kneeling on the ground, said to him, Most high excellent and redoubted Emperour, my Father (your humble servant) kisseth the hands of your Majestie, and humbly entreateth you, that without delay you bestow Knight-hood on this Gentleman, for he shall

as well imploy it as any other living. The Emperour presently knew the Damsell, as her whom he had many times seene with her Father *Alquis* the Negromancer: wherefore he kindly received her; and casting his eyes on *Perion*, he seemed so fair, and of so goodly a stature, that he was moved to speake these words: Truly it is easie to believe, that of so excellent a person, should issue no other then faire and Knightly deeds; wherefore Damsell I will satisfie your Fathers will, seeing that he prayes me. And so addressing himself to *Perion*, he asked him from whence he came, but he answered never a word, according to the promise which he made to *Alquesa*, who spake for him, saying to the Emperour: Sir, I intreat you to pardon him; for without falsifying his faith, he cannot at present discourse with you, or any other of this Court. Well answered he, he shall another time; in the meane time lead him to the Ladyes, to th'end that they may see him; and to morrow after the watch, I will give him the Order. *Alquesa* arose and was led with *Perion* into the Chamber of the Empreffe, whom she saluted, as she knew well how to doe; then she said to her, Madam, my Father hath sent you this Gentleman, whom he prayes you to receive, as him who deserves, being issued of a Linage very well knowne amongst the best Knights in the world. Then *Perion* approached and kissed her hands. By my God answered the Empreffe, if Knight-hood be as well accomplished in him, as his beauty: hee will be (by all reason) the most accomplished in armes, as hath been these hundred yeares. *Perion* made great obeysance to her, without speaking one word, and at that instant came *Onolerea* and *Gricilerea*, Daughters of the Emperour, esteemed such, that in all *Asia*, their equall in beauty could not be found: which *Perion* marvelling at especially for *Gricilerea*, could not forbear, but he said in himselfe: Good God! Ladyes, in whom nature hath taken great pleasure to make faire: for I never thought in all my life, to see that amongst all living, which I now see in you two. Then being surprized with an affection not accustomed;

customed; he so changed his colour that *Alquesa* perceived it. Wherefore addressing her speech to *Gricilerea*, who was the youngest, she said to her; Madam, my Father sends you word by me, that hee hath chosen this Gentleman to serve you as your Knight, and adviseth you to receive and accept him for such a one, for he will obey you even as your greatnesse deserveth. She rightly touched the disease of this Princeesse, for Love had at that instant bound her by the presence of *Perion*, in such manner that she answered to *Alquesa*: Your Father hath long since made me this promise, I believe him and follow his advice, seeing that it pleased the Emperour to command me the same day that he took leave of him: And that he assured me of what I see, which is the fairest Gentleman in the World. But for all this, *Perion* spake not one word, but made his eyes serve as an interpreter, which carried to the heart of this princeesse all the thanks which the tongue could express exercising its office: Nevertheless there was none of them, who were not astonished to see him so dumb, and amongst others *Oxolorea*, who (being surprized with a certaine jealousy for the good of her Sister) said to *Alquesa*: I pray you Damsell advertise your Father, that my sister will be very harsh, if she should refuse the present which he hath sent her by you; at which I am not angry, but I would that he would have as good remembrance of me, as hee hath had of her, although that the Gentleman cannot excuse himselfe for the rigour which he useth towards us, not deigning to speak to any of us. Madam, answered *Alquesa*, it is at present forbidden him, some other time he shall make amends for this fault: And as for my Father, hee knows what is needfull for you; also he hath commanded me to tell you, that he hath in guard such a one, that you shall wish well to him all your life; and he will bring him in short time. He shall be very welcome answered she. During this loving discourse, love gained place by little and little in the hearts of *Perion* and *Gricilerea*, in such manner that he possessed himselfe of all, rendering them so united in

in perfection of Love, that there never was two more true lovers, as by our History you shall know hereafter. Then the Emperour came into the Chamber, who after he had a long time discoursed with the Ladyes, of that which *Alquise* father to the Damsell sent him, concerning *Perion*; considering the paines which he had taken to come armed from the Sea side on foot to the Pallace, he called a Master of his household, to whom he gave command to lead him to refresh himselfe, the which he did. Then about the evening certain Knights came to him, which conducted him to the Chappell, where he watched (according to the custome) untill the next morning, the Emperour came to find him, accompanied with the Emperesse, the two Princeesses *Oxolorea* and *Gricilerea*, and a great company of Knights, Ladyes and Damsells. And as the Mass was celebrated, the Emperour came to him, and gave him the Order: But he perceived that he was well armed with all Armes but a Sword, and for this cause he willed one to goe presently and fetch one of his. But *Alquesa* who held that which she had alwaies carryed with the shield, said to him; Sir, My Father hath dedicated this to his service, which shall be guided about him if you please, by my Lady *Gricilerea*; and I am charged humbly to desire it of you: In good faith quoth the Emperour, it doth please me well. Then my Lady, said *Alquesa* to the Infanta, doe your part. At this word, *Gricilerea* took the Sword, and put it to the side of the Gentleman, saying to him: Thus I receive you for my Knight, God make you happy, and a wise man. Madam, answered *Alquesa*, seeing that he hath received such honour at your hands, it is reasonable that he acknowledge it without delay. Then taking a great Diamond, and giving it to *Perion*: Present her said she this Jewell, in witness of the service which you owe her for the future, and for the cause that she may have remembrance of you. *Perion* obeyed to her commands, and *Gricilerea* received it with a heart, putting it on her finger. Then going from the Chappell, the new Knight was conducted into the great Hall of

the Pallace, where the Clothes were staid for dinner. Then the Emperour and *Perion* sat right against the Princes; truly there was no Viands could be thought on, that were not there served; and nevertheless he did eat but very little, being (as he thought) filled enough with the beauty, and good demeanor of his Love, who tooke all the paines in the world to entertaine him, hoping to get some word from him, which she could not get, in such sort that she was much discontented at his disdain; nevertheless *Alquesa* appeased all so well, that this little anger afterward turned to no other but great love.

CHAP. III.

How Perion of Gaule vanquished Alpatrasie Duke of Orcalea, who maintained his Lady to be fairer, then all the other Ladyes or Damsells in the World.

After the dinner was ended, and as the Clothes were taken away, there entred into the Hall a Knight armed at all points, except his hands and head: He was of very great stature, and was followed by ten Knights, twenty Squires, and one Damsell, in very good Order. He had hanging at his neck a very rich shield, in the middle whereof, there was portracted a Lady of most excellent beauty. He being come before the Emperour, put his knee to the ground; and all the company approached together to heare what he would say. Then he spake in this manner.

Most Mighty Emperour of *Trebisond*; the cause which at this time, causeth me to present my selfe before your Majesty; is to let you know that I who am Duke of *Orcalea*, by name *Alpatrasie*, do love a Damsell, named *Dialestrea*, Daughter to a Knight, a great Lord my Neighbour. And as I have divers times told her the good will

which

which I beare her; So she hath assured me that she would not love me, before that I have been in the Courts of all the Kings and Princes of *Asia*, to maintaine that her beauty exceedeth all the excellency which other Ladyes and Damsells are endewed with; and if any contradict it, let them touch the Image portracted in this shield, the which is her Figure; and I will combate with them, and bring them to that condition, that they shall yield themselves Prisoners to my Lady, to whom I am bound to send them. And if fortune shall enable me to remain vanquisher of all those who shall enterprize the combate against me, then I shall enjoy her love, otherwise not. And to th'end that she may have good assurance of what shall happen, she hath given charge to this Damsell, named *Estreliene* to follow me, to make her a true report of my actions. I have already traversed many far Countries, & fought with above fifty Knights, whom I have all sent to her: and Sir I hope to be no less prosperous in this your Court, then I have been in others: and therefore if there be any one who will contradict the beauty of my Lady, let him come presently and touch the shield, and prepare himselfe for the Combate. Then the Knight held his peace, looking on the countenance of those who hearkened to him: but there was none so hardy to open his mouth to speak one word, although that the most part of them had before their eyes, those whom they held for their Ladyes and loves. Yet the greatnes of the adventurous Knight, made them lose their hearts, speech, and force; at which *Perion* being astonished, cast his eyes on the Infanta *Gricilerea*, and seeing that she looked upon him as though she called him to succour her, being moved with an excreame desire to doe her service, he altogether forgot the promise which he had made to *Alquesa*, not to speake without her leave. And so approaching neare to the Duke of *Orcalea*, he laid hands on the shield with such great force, that he pulled it from his neck, casting it with so great strength to the ground, that he broke it in pieces, saying so loud that every one heard him. By my head Sir Knight,

Knight, this is too great blasphemy against so honorable a Company. And if it please God this injurie shall not be done them in my presence, so long as I have the meanes to defend them! These words so bravely spoken by *Perion*, did very much please all that heard him: and more especially, her for whose love it had been enterprized: Nevertheless *Alpatrasie* as modestly answered: in good faith Knight, you use so little courtesie that you deserve to be greatly blamed, but the means that I intend suddenly to take in open battell, hinders me at this time to say that which I thinke. *Perion* held his peace: For *Alquesa* mightily reprov'd him for speaking without her licence. Nevertheless quoth she, seeing that you have so much forgotten your selfe, goe forwards, and with Gods help you will end all with honour: Wherefore Sir said she to the Emperor, may it please you to give him a horse, for I have brought him hither as you know on foot. Truly answered he, that is a very reasonable request, seeing that he himselfe will defend the honors of so many Ladies as are here present. Then he commanded a Squire to fetch him one of the best horses in his stable: In the mean time the Duke alighted and provided himself for the Combate, and alsoone *Perion* was conducted into the field by the Dukes of *Cortelsande la Fonta*. The Emperor, together with the Ladies placed themselves at the windowes, and as the two Combatants were readie to doe their devoir, the Trumpets began to sound, wherefore they ran one against the other with so great force, that the Duke broke his lance on the new Knight, who failed of his attempt: But in passing, they encountered with bodies and heads with such force, that horses and men measured their length on the ground, that every one thought them to be dead. Which *Gricilerea* seeing she became extreame sad: and as the tears came from her eyes, she perceived *Perion* to rise up, being ashamed of his mishap. So he quickly hid hold on his Sheild, and drawing forth his sword, he marched towards his enemy,

who

who was likewise got upon his feet. Then there began a most cruel Combate between them, during which time, they behaved themselves so well one against the other, that by the space of an houre or more, it was hard to judge to whom the victory would happen. But in an instant the Dukes chance altered: for he began to faint, and on the other side the new Knight seemed more quick and nimble then before. Certainly, he who had then taken notice of the countenance of *Gricilerea*, the visage which she bore gave testimony enough of the pleasure which she had in her soul, seeing her Lover ready to have the victory: who lifting up his head, espied her from among all the others. For which cause he redoubled his forces in such manner, that he reached the Duke such a blow on his helmet, and wounded his head so rightly, that he fell down astonished. Then he advanced him, and by his strength broke the buckles of his Helmet: and disarmed him, ready to kill him: when *Estreleiene* entred into the field, and casting her selfe on her knees, she intreated *Perion* to have mercy on him. Nevertheless he seemed to be deafe to her demands, and for this cause she being very much discontented, addressed her selfe to *Alquesa*, intreated her with doubled hands to intreat for her. Which she refused not, but said to *Perion*, Knight, content your selfe with this victory, and for my sake save the Duke. At these words *Perion* retired back, and wiping his sword on the green grasse, he put it up in the sheath. Goe quoth *Alquesa* to *Estreleiene*, and looke after your Knight; for, for asmuch as I can perceive, he hath great need thereof. The strange Damisell humbly thanked her, and at that present *Perion*'s horse was brought to him, upon which he mounted, but before he departed out of the field, *Alquesa* spake softly to him, Sir Knight, it is requisite that without any further delay we return into our Barque, (from whence (if you keep your promise) you may not depart without my consent: And likewise I pray you, that from henceforth you cause your selfe to be

C 3

called

called the Knight of the Sphere: for he who hath sent unto you by me Armes, the which you beare, hath all his confidence in you. And for this cause I did forbid you at our entrance into this Court, to speak to any, doubting least you should be staied, and my enterprize hindred: So then, let us not stay here any longer, and let us take this way to the Sea side. Saying so, she struck her palfrey, and *Perion* followed her with great grief, seeing himself so soon barred from the presence of his new Ladie: of whom he could not by any meanes take any other leave, but only by passing by the window where she and her sister were seated, there he looked upon her with so pittiful a Countenance, that she might easily know the grief wherewith he was accompanied; And from thence he and *Alquesa* rode to the Barque, into which he entred, And the Apes began to rowe. The Emperor and those of his Company being abashed at their so sudden departure, did not know at the first what to think, nevertheless considering that all this had happened by the advise of the sage Father of *Alquesa*, they made the less wonder at it. And during these passages, the Duke was carried out of the field, who without any long stay in the Country, where he had been so illy handled, he (with his Company) took the way which he had come so sad, that death had been very agreeable to him. But surely, *Gricilees* suffered not less on her part, for the so sudden absence of her *Perion*: Nevertheless, we will not at this houre give her any remedy, but onely being in hope to see him another time: and we will alter our discourse, to the end we may tell you what adventure happened to those, which departed from the Port of *Constantinople*, to enter into search of their Companion.

CHAP. IV.

How Lisuart, Florestan, and the others sailing in the Sea, in search of Perion, the vessel wherein Vaillides and Quedragant were, was cast by storme on the Isle of the Giant Argamont, against whom they combated and vanquished.

YOU have not long since heard, how *Lisuart*, *Florestan*, *Parmenir*, and *Gahunes* embarked themselves in one ship: *Vaillides* and *Quedragant* in another: *Languires* and *Abies* of *Ireland*, in like manner separated. They having then taken leave of the old Emperor of *Constantinople*, causing to hoise the sailes and weigh the anchors, they sailed in the maine Sea, they had not long sailed so, but such a tempest happened, that the Pilots, Steers-men Mariners themselves, thought to perish; for they had not left them Saile, Mainie Masts, nor Rudder, that was not broken in many pieces, for which cause they were so scattered by the space of three weeks, that without any hope, they followed fortune, as it pleased the winde and the waves to guide them. And in this distresse the ship wherein *Vaillides* and *Quedragant* were arived at the break of day, very neer to a faire Isle, which was soone known by the Mariners to be the Isle of the *Fueille Blanche*, and the Lord of it was one of the cruellest Gyants in the world, named *Argamont* the valiant; This *Argamont* had a daughter named *Dardadie*, who was very well known of *Ardan Comile*: he which *Amadis de Gaule* vanquished in the town of *Fenuse*, as the second book largely declareth. And to let you know what knowledge he had of her, know, that one day amongst others, as he went to search for strange adventures, making triall of his person in all Countries, he arived in this Isle, where he combated against the Giant *Gaudantell*, the father

ther of *Argamont* : but at the instant they found themselves allied, and so they became so great friends, that the Giant would have delivered his sword to *Ardan*, giving him the honour of the victory, which the other refused. And so striving to whom this glory should remaine, they arived at the Castle of the *Fueille Blanche*, where *Argamont* (father of the Damsel of whom I lately spake) kindly welcomed him. Especially, when they understood the alliance and parentage which they had together. But it happened that the thirteenth day following *Gandandell* departed this life, he had been so sorely wounded by *Ardan Comile*, who was very much grieved therefore, especially for the love which he bore to the daughter of *Argamont* : of whom he was so much enamoured, that forgetting the honor, and affinity of Parentage, he wholly discovered his affections, to her, and they jumbled their sidles so well together that they envied on another that which some have called the womans merciful guist : in such sort that nine moneths after this Damsel had a son, who was named *Ardadile Canile*, so called for the love of his Father. And know faith the Mariners to *Vaillides*, that this *Argamont* and his little son, are at this time reputed the valliantest, and cruellest Knights under the Cope of heaven : So that none arives in this Isle that are not killed or taken by them. By God answered *Quedragant*, this shall not hinder us from going to finde them. And he commanded to put the ship a land, which was done not without the great fear and horror of all those of the ship ; So the two Knights armed themselves, and taking their horses out of the Vessel, they marched towards the trees ; and they marched so long that they arived at the entry of a great plain, from whence they could easily see the Castle of the *Fueille Blanche*. But they had hardly cast their eyes on it, when they heard a horne sounded from the highest Towers by the watch, which the Giant had appointed : to give him notice when any strange ship should take Port in

in his Marches. And they tarried not long before *Argamont* came out from his Fort, and armed with plates of fine Steele, mounted on a great Horse, came before the Knights, to whom he said in a great bravado : Poore unfortunate ones, how dare you appeare before me ? Yield your selves prisoners, and content your selves with the foolish enterprize which you have done, to enter thus armed into my Country. *Quedragant* was greatly moved to hear himselfe so injured ; wherefore he answered him : By my head, great villaine, you are far from your guesse ; for we hope for future honour in breaking your head, and to vanquish you as you deserve : and although fortune should be ill on our side, and we should dye in the field ; this would be more glory to us, to end our dayes with our Swords in our hands ; then through feare to accept of your proffers ; wherefore lay aside these threats, and now employ your time (if you can) more in Knightly deeds, then in such foolish words. During this discourse, the Giant contemplated on the person of *Quedragant*, who seemed to him a fair Knight. And for this cause, he somewhat appeased his Choller, and said to him ; Truly I do believe that you are a good Knight, nevertheless you may easily know, that your strength in respect of mine, is little or nothing. And seeing it is your desire to come both together, you shall soone see what honour you will purchase by trying your selves against me, so as you brag. And having spoken these words, he lifted up a great Mace which he had in his hand, thinking to strike *Quedragant* : Then *Vaillides*, who was somewhat behind, knowing his will, couched his Lance, and giving spurs to his Horse, charged *Argamont* so directly, that he was ready to fall from his Horse. But in his passage, he received such a blow with the Giants Mace, that would he or not, he was cast on the ground. *Quedragant* being greatly angred, thinking to revenge him, ranne straight upon *Argamont*, and broke his Lance on him, without doing him any hurt : At the which, the Giant being glad, cryed at the end of his Course with a loud voice ;

And well Sir Knight, had not your fellow gained more by rendring himselfe my Prisoner, then to get that which he hath attained to, as you may see? If my companion saith he, hath been hardly handled by you, you shall presently see that I know how to revenge him, and my selfe also. Saying so, he came near to *Argamont*, and gave him a blow on his eare: And th'other thinking to revenge himselfe, he stroke his Mace with so great strength against *Quedragant*, that if he had hit him, he had killed him without doubt; so he skinned the blow, and advanced forwards, meeting with the eare of *Argamonts* Horse, and stunned him, and in falling he fell on the knee of the Giant, at which he received so great pain, that from thence forwards he was forced to fight upon one legge. At that instant *Vaillides* came to himselfe, at which *Quedragant* was greatly pleased, for he thought he had been killed; but seeing him whole, he was in great hopes to vanquish his Enemy; and therefore they both ranne on him. His Mace was fallen out of his hand, wherefore he tooke a great Cimiter (which he had about him) in his hand, and with a sterne countenance he endeavoured to defend himselfe: nevertheless *Vaillides* came upon him, and with one blow struck his Helmet into his head; at which the Giant was more astonished then before: for the blood began to runne downe his eyes. And as one ill turne seldom comes alone, as he was about to revenge himself, and strike him who had hurt him, he advanced his Cynmitter, which by good fortune fell upon a stone (wherewith *Vaillides* had made him a shield) and with the great force of the blow broke it in pieces, there remaining in his hand no more but the handle. Then the two Knights were assured of the Victory: wherefore they encompassed him on every side, so nearly pressing on him, that they put him out of breath; and seizing on his neck, they took the Helmet from his head. Now you are a dead man quoth *Vaillides*, if you do not acknowledge your selfe vanquished, and obey our commands. I am quoth he dead if it so please you, not van.

vanquished: for he alone is vanquished, who through faint-heartedness ceaseth to doe his endeavour; and you know that I have not spared my self, so long as fortune gave me the power. But as for the accomplishing of your pleasures, in that I will willingly obey you, on condition that my honour be not interested; otherwise I had rather loose my life. Truly said they, you speake even as you ought; we will save your life, and will command you nothing, but what shall redound to your honour and reputation. If it be so quoth the Giant, I will obey you. Then said the Knights, this is that which you must doe, that forgetting your Idollatrous faith, you from henceforth believe in *Jesus Christ*, true God and Man; who for you, and for us all, received death and passion, and rose againe from the dead the third day after. And in this faith you shall make your Sonne *Ardadill* to believe, then you shall go together to the Emperour of *Constantinople*; and as from us, you shall faithfully declare to him, the manner of our Combate; and from henceforth you shall be his and our perpetuall friends and servants. Sirs, answered he, I doe promise and sweare it to you; for long since I have beene of this minde. Upon this assurance, *Vaillides* and *Quedragant* tooke him by the armes, and as they led him to his Castle, they met *Almatrasa* his Wife, who having seen him fall, came to entreat the Knights to have mercy on him: but seeing that they were made friends, she asked him if he were mortally wounded: No answered he, thanks to our Lord *Jesus Christ*, in whom I now doe and will alwaies believe, and so shall all those that wish me well. O *Jupiter*! cryed the Giantesse, what doe I heare? will you loose your selfe, and yours so foolishly? Wife said the Giant, you your selfe shall be the first that shall obey me; and after you, all others of this Island, as well as you, shall believe in that God which I now adore, And for what occasion said *Almatrasa*? By reason saith he, that the Combate which I have had against these two Knights, hath given me experience, that their God is the true God, and ours are false and ly-

ers: and therefore be satisfied without any further enquiry. So they came to the Castle, and from thence he was led into his Chamber, and put between two Clothes, where *Almaerose* (who was skilfull in the Art of Chyrurgery) looked to his wounds; and he was so carefully provided for, that she assured him of his suddain health; wherefore he earnestly entreated the two Knights not as yet to leave him but to stay with him for a certaine time; during which time said he, I will honour you as you deserve; which liked *Vaillides* and his Companion very well, that they might refresh themselves of the travell which they had undergone, by reason of their so long tempest: for which cause they sent for their Mariners, who hearing good news of the Victory which they had obtained of *Argamone*, they praised God with all their hearts; nevertheless wondring at the prowesse of *Quedragant* and *Vaillides*, who whilst their ship was in repairing, remembred to aske of their Host, where his Sonne *Arasdale Canile* was. Sirs answered he, the great Souldan of *Lygneia* not long since, sent a Gentleman in all hast to me with expresse Letters, by which he entreated me to give him my Sonne, to make him Lieutenant Generall of a great Army, which he newly mustred with the Souldans of *Persia*, of *Alipia*, of *Babylon*, and many others, hoping to ruine the Emperour, and Empire of *Constantinople*; forasmuch as they knew for certaine, that *Amadis de Gaule* (one of the best Knights in the World) is enchanted, together with *Esplandian* his Sonne, and a great many of the principall Knights of Christendome, by whom *Trace* was helped in the last expedition. And now this *Amadis*, and his friends are so sure, as it is believed, it is sure that the Empire may easily be subdued, and the Emperour taken Captive; which is the cause why all Pagan Kings doe muster so great force, hoping in short time to meet together at the Port of *Tenedos* in *Phrigia*, where I thinke my Son *Canile* is already arived, with those of *Asia* the lesse, and some other of the nearest Borderers: for it is impossible he should have any more as yet, in regard of the far Countries

tries from whence they are to come, that they may meet together, as they think sooner then the latter end of *August*. It was as yet but the beginning of *March*: wherefore *Quedragant* and *Vaillides* hearing this newes, resolved (that if they did not finde their Companions before *July*) to goe directly to *Constantinople* to aid the Emperour. But least we should too long forget him whom they were in search of: we will leave them with the Giant, whom they baptized, and all his Family, and we will tell you what hapned to *Alquesa*, and the Knight that she conducted.

CHAP. V.

How the Barque, wherein Perion of Gaule surnamed the Knight of the Sphere, and Alquesa sailed in, came to shore at the foot of a very fair Isle, and of the adventures which happened to him,

YOU have already heard the manner how the Knight of the Sphere, and the Damsel entered into their Barque where the Apes were, in which they sailed eight dayes, without happening on any adventure. But the ninth following the Vessel, drew neer to the foot of a high Rock, where there was a little path-way which led to the top. So *Alquesa* shewed it to *Perion*, and said to him, Sir Knight, I pray you by the faith which you owe to God, and the thing which you love best in this world, that you will follow this way, which will lead you to the top of the Rock: where you shall finde a plain Country, and a Fountaine in the middle. Tarrie for me there, and whatsoever happen to you, do not depart from it, before you have newes of me to the contrary, and remember your selfe of the promise you have made me.

me. Damsel quoth he, you may assure your self that the fear of death shall not cause me to falsifie my word to you. Then he landed, and taking his horse by the reins, he mounted on him, and rode on to the top of the Rock, until he found the Plaine, even as *Alquesz* had told him. It was at that time sun-set & neer night, wherefore he resolved to goe no further, but to stay till the morning: and therefore he alighted from his horse, and did eat something that he had brought with him, then he slept until the break of day, when as he mounted on his horse. And when he had rid about halfe the day, he saw the fountaine, in the most pleasant and delectable place that could be imagined, and the water issued from twelve pipes, a crosse, a pillar: upon which was erected the Effigies of a Knight, armed at all points, except the the Helmet and Gantlets, and he held in his left hand an Emperors Crown, and in his right a Roll of Coper Gilt: Wherein was ingraved latine letters, which said, In the time that this Crowne shall be in the greatest danger of his estate, and that the horrible cries, and great yelling shall be asswaged, the flower of Chivalry shall flourish, abasing the pride of many, with the new conquered Sword. *Perion* read and read againe, very often this Prophecie, and in the reading he tooke singular pleasure in the antiquitie of the Image: For he had heard it told to King *Amadis* his Father, that in *Constantinople*, upon the Hell gate, there was just such another, which was certainly believed to be erected by *Apolidon* himself. Thus the Knight of the Sphere contemplating on the strange things which he beheld, he saw two of the Apes of his Barque who erected him a faire Arbor: whither they brought such abundance of victuals, that there was sufficient to keep him twelve or fifteen whole dayes. But at that instant he heard the neighing of horses; wherefore hee looked about him on all sides, to see what it was. Then he saw a very great Giant on horseback, holding in his hand a tough and strong Javelin, and he had

had ten men very well armed following him, and in a Charriot drawn with four horses: wherein was bound and fettered an old man, having his beard so white and long, that it reached below his girdle, and besides him two Knights also covered with their arms, shackled with fetters, and great irons on their feet. The Giant did not see *Perion* till he came very neer him; but so soon as he saw him shaking his Javelin, he began to cry. Unfortunate Creature! what Devil hath brought you to this place, to end your life so unfortunately, and the Knight of the Sphere was no whit danted at his threats, but suddenly drawing forth his Sword answered him: By my head gre't villain you have good reason to threaten me, in respect of the ill which you shall receive at my hands: for Jesus Christ who is my guide, being angry at the tyranny wherein you have so long lived, promiseth me strength to revenge those whom thou hast troubled all thy life, who I will presently destroy, to send thy soule to the Devil, of whom thou lately didst speak; The Giant was so angrie at these words, that he spurred his horse to run upon the Knight of the Sphere: but he went forwards, giving him such a blow with his Lance on his right shoulder, that the paine constrained him to let fall his Javelin: nevertheless he quickly laid hands on a Mace of Iron, which hung at his saddle bow; And as they both turned about at the end of their Course for to joine together again, the Giants horse set his foot in a hole, and fell so heavily under his Master, that he broke his neck. Which the Knight of the Sphere seeing, he suddenly alighted, and cut of his head, then he mounted again; for he heard those who led the prisoners, cry with a loud voice, Traitor, Traitor, you shall die without remedie, and it shall boot you nothing to flie. Then they ran upon *Perion*, who in good time for him was unexpectedly succoured by three Knights, each of them carrying a shield of Gold, in the middle whereof was a great Crosse red as blood, those

of whom I speak, seeing so great odds, as ten against one, resolved to aid the weakest: and for this cause plucking down the visor of their Helmets, just as those of the Giants partly charged the Knight of the Sphere, they entered pell mell, and at their arrivall they unhorsed three that they never spake again. The Knight of the Sphere being abashed at so ready aid, would make them to know, that he had a part in the practise, in such manner, that they four played their parts so well, that in the end they all ten lost their lives, the three Crossed men wondering who he should be that they had aided; for they never saw a Knight fight more hardily and better. One while they had an opinion that it was *Amadis*, or *Esplandian* his son, then on a sudden knowing that they were enchanted, they altered their minde, and rather thought him to be *Norandol*, or the valiant *Frondalo*; but they had often seen them in such skirmishes, and they never came neer him in vallor, towards whom they advanced, praying him for courtesie to tell him his name. Sirs answered he, the Crosse which you bear betokening you to be Christians, and the good aid which I have received of you, obligeth me to satisfie your request. My name (so long as it pleaseth a Damsel who hath sent me hither) is the Knight of the Sphere, as those who are acquainted with me, call me *Perion* of *Gaule*, Son of *Amadis* King of great Britaine. He had no sooner ended his words, but the three crossed came to embrace him, praising God for so happy a meeting. How? said *Perion* do you then know me? Know you? answered one of them, yes truly, and for good cause, seeing that I am your kinsman *Talanque*, son of *Galaor*, brother to the King your father, and this is *Manchy*, a well esteemed Knight amongst the best in the world. Truly said *Perion*, this adventure is the best for me that I could have wisht for: but I pray you tell me who is the third. Sir answered *Talanque*, this is she who keeps me from marrying Queen *Calafia* of whom you have sometimes heard. Yes, by my

my faith said he, although that I never thought to have seen a woman endowed with so good a heart, and o great Prowesse. Then *Talanque* called the Queen, and said to her: Madam, you have now in your hands the brother of that Christian Prince, which you hate most, as I have often heard you say. And he said this for sport, for she oftentimes published, and in all companies, that she was more beholding to the Emperor *Esplandian*, then to all the men of the world, as well for the honor and good cheere which he made her at *Constantinople*, as for giving her a husband so wise, vertuous, and full of Prowesse. Wherefore knowing that it was *Perion*, she cast down her sheild: and setting her knees to the ground she would have kissed his hands; But he lifted her up, and said to her, how Madam, is this the fashion at *Californi*, thus to welcome those whom they hate for the love of their Kindred? Sir said she, wives are obliged to performe the commands of their husbands, otherwise be sure that without death, or cruel imprisonment you should not escape from me. They all fell alaughing at the good grace wherewith the Queen spake these threatnings. And as they were thus talking, the Prisoners who were bound to the Cart (as you have understood) found the means to cut the cords, and come to the Knight of the Sphere, who going to the old man that went before them all, he said to them: Alas old man, what sinister fortune have you to be brought into such misery in your old years! Sir, answered he, I will alwayes praise the Lord, and blesse him for you who have delivered me from death. And before I tell you any further, I humbly intreat you for Gods sake to grant me one gift which shall cost you little, and which you cannot refuse as I thinke: considering your goodness, who hath compassion of poore, miserable afflicted persons, as I am. Father, said the Knight of the Sphere, you shall have your pleasure of me. That which I require of you, answered the good man, is, that you give me my liberty, and that for this

E

time

time you enquire of my Estate: and I will at one time or other acknowledge the favor which you have done me. Truly said *Perion*, seeing that it is your pleasure to hide your selfe from me, I am content. Then he asked the others who had so chained them; but they were so ill, that they could not suddenly know him who spake to them, although that to finde him they were entred into search with *Lisuart*. They had been hitherto covered with their Helmets: wherefore it was no marvel, if *Perion* himself did not know them, untill they took heart, and as they thought they had dreamed, lifting their hands to Heaven, and stretching forth their armes, they cryed: Ah God! is this which we now see with our owne eyes possible to be true? Saying, so, they pulled off their Helmets, and stooped down to kisse the feet of *Perion*, who knew them to be *Languines* and *Abies* of *Ireland*, two of his Companions; he was so glad, that in embracing them, he said to the Crossed Knights, My friends, if you knew who these Gentlemen are, perhaps you would have part of my great pleasure. Then he related to them how they departed out of great Britaine together, and what adventure had separated them. *Talanque*, *Manoly*, and the Queen *Calase*: did much marvel: all which the Knight of the Sphere led into the Arbor: Nevertheless, before they arived there, the old man departed from them: and mounting on one of the horses who had lost their Masters, he fled with a great gallop through the Forest, at which the Knight of the Sphere began to laugh, saying to the others: I think this good man thinks he is pursued by the Giant. See I pray, if fear doe not sharpen his spurs, which I would forgive him with a very good will, if I knew his name. But you who have been with him, said he, to *Languines* and *Abies*, cannot you resolve me in this point? In good faith, answered they, we have as little knowledge of him as you; for know, said *Languines*, that my Companion and I departing from the Port of *Constantinople*, to goe in search of you,

you, so soon as we had set saile, there arose such a tempest, that at the end of three weeks we were at *Palestine* neer to *Joppa*, where we landed to give order to repaire our ship, and take in fresh water which we wanted. In the meane time we tooke out our horses, and armed at all points, we went to vilit the Countrie, in such manner, that by fortune we happened upon a shady place: on one side whereof there did run a most sweet and faire Fountaine, wherewith we dranke, and washed our hands and faces. And at an ill time as we were refreshing our selves, we were charged by fifteen Knights, who issued out of a Grove, they surprized us before we were ready: Nevertheless we defended our selves a long time against them. But in the conclusion, knowing we must die, we were forced to lay down our armes, and obey their commands, although that this was not without great losse; for of the fifteen we left five of them for a gage, and the ten likewise had somewhat to doe, when the Giant who lies dead there, arived conducting in the Charriot he who is fled now. Then our resistance was of little force, and we remained his prisoners causing us to be changed, just as you have found us in the good houre. By my head answered *Perion*, I never heard of so marvellous an adventure, where the event is so good, God be thanked. They had not as then eaten all the day, wherefore finding the victual which the Apes had provided, they began to eat, not without lamenting for *Lisuart*, and the rest of their Company whom the storme drove, as you shall presently hear.

CHAP. VI.

How the Vessel, wherein was Lisvart, Florestan, Parmenir and Galuanes was cast neer to the great City of Trebifond, and of the discourse which they had with the Emperor and the Ladies.



Fortune was so averse and contrary to those who embarqued themselves to goe in search of *Perion* that their vessels were separated, and so they lost sight of one another. The ship wherein *Parmenir*, *Galuanes*, *Lisvart*, and *Florestan* were, escaping the danger of many shipwracks, happened (by Gods good pleasure) to arive at the Port of *Trebifond*, where they found a Venetian ship, laden with Merchandize, and waited for nothing but a faire winde to saile into *Italie*. There the Knights enquired of the custome of the Countie, and what newes there was. Sirs answered the Merchants a few dayes since, we saw the strangest adventure that could be imagined. And what was it? said *Lisvart*, I pray let us intreat you out of courtesie to let us understand what it was. Know then said one of them, that the Emperor being in his Palace in the Companie of the Empreſſe, and their two daughters, there entred a Damſel richly clad, carrying on her neck a Shield and Sword richly garnished: and this woman did lead by the hand one of the fairest young Gentlemen that ever I beheld, being armed at all points with a black harness, except his head which was naked. Then he recounted every thing that happened to *Perion* of *Gaule* and *A'queſa*: and by that meanes *Lisvart* and his Companions did easily know that the Merchants did speak of him, for whom they had taken so great paines to finde, nevertheless marveling what adventure should bring him thither. And for

for this cause they thought good to Land, and goe to the Emperour, of whom they might have more certaine tydings. So they furnished themselves so well as they could, especially *Lisvart* who was one of the fairest Creatures that could be; and mounting on Horse back, they went into the Towne, and came to the Palace where they did alight; and passing further, they came into a great Hall, where the Emperour was in company of many Knights, and wisemen. At their arivall every one did reverence them, and gave way to them to approach neare his Majestie; *Lisvart* who marched before them all, spake thus to him; Sir, your high renowne and great bounty, knowne throughout the whole world, hath moved my Companions and me, to come into this your Court; not onely to doe you reverence, as your Majesties greatnesse doth deserve, but also in hoping to have good newes of a young Gentleman, who (as it hath beene told us) you have made Knight not long since, at the request of a Damſell who lately brought him hither to you. And Sir, for as much as I never had intention to receive knight-hood, at the hands of any other then his; and that my age sum-moneh me to take more upon me then I have heretofore done: I humbly intreat you to tell us what you know, to the end that having found him, I may have that which I hope for, and desire above all things. The Emperour (being a gracious and affable Prince) answered *Lisvart*, that hee and all his Company were very welcome. And as for the young Knight, said he, which you seek, assure your selves, my friends, that at present I know no newes of him: at which I am grieved; for I love and esteeme him, as much as any other that I know, because of the great beginning of Knight-hood which I saw in him; and assure your selves, that I am altogether ignorant of the rest of his Estate: for he left this Court after so strange a manner, that when I think thereof, I believe to have dreamed. Sir, answered *Lisvart*, I will certifie unto you, that he is sonne to the hardy Knight *Amadis de Gaule*, King of great Brit-

tain, and the faire *Oriana*. Aha, said the Emperour, you tell me wonders, that he to whom I have given Knight-hood, should be the Sonne of the most renowned Prince in the World. By my faith, I never had more desire to recover any man, then I have to get him: wherefore if I can once more get him, he shal give me satisfaction for the little courtesie he hath shewn me in so hiding himselfe. And looking upon *Lisuart* very earnestly, I believe said he, that you are of his kindred: for you are very like him. Sir, answered *Lisuart*, untill it shall please God to make me such a one, that I may by my deeds dare to name my Parents, I have no intention to be known further. Wherefore the Emperour enquired no further; but called *Duke delafonte*, and commanded him to lead him and the other strange Knights to the Empreſſe, and say to his Daughter *Gricilerea*, that she should doe them all the honour she could, especially to *Lisuart*: for they came in search of her Knight. The Duke obeying to his commands, tooke *Lisuart* by the hand, who being come before the Empreſſe kissed her hands, and she embraced him, telling that he and his companions were welcome. And *Lisuart* seeing the Infantaes, *Onolerea* and *Gricilerea*, made great reverence to them; and the Duke *Delafonte* told them what the Emperour said. In good faith answered *Gricilerea*, he hath good reason to command me to honour this Gentleman, for besides his being one of the fairest that ever I saw, I thinke him to become of high Linage; at the least, I doe not remember that ever I have known a person more resembling my Knight then he, which causeth me with a better will to obey his commands. And therefore faire Sir, said she to *Lisuart*, I would entreate you to let me truly know who he is that you seeke, and would by no meanes speak to us. During these speeches, *Love*, who is not a respecter of persons, wounded the hearts of *Lisuart* and *Onolerea* with one and the same shaft, to whom the eye being messenger of the heart, would give present remedy. contenting both their minds, by a regard which promised them cure and contentment. The which

Perion

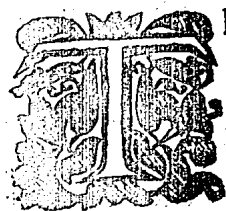
Perion endeavoured to dissemble, answering to *Gricilerea*; Madam, the Knight whom you have a desire to know, is Sonne of King *Anadis de Gam'e*, and his name is *Perion*. To tell you further would be time lost, for the prowesse of his Father (who hath so many times encompassed the world) causeth his Sonne to be praised with the beginning, which he hath made at armes. Faire Sir, said *Onolerea*, hath no other occasion brought you into this Court, but onely to find him? No Madam, untill this present said he; but I well see that for the future, there will be more causes; if I knew that thereby I should doe you any earthly service. *Onolerea* did most affectionately thanke him, the better to disguise what she thought she said to him: Truly you were well counselled to come hither, if so be you desire ready newes; for the Damsell that brought him hither, is very familiar at this place, and she will not tarry long before she returne to us; and then you may know of her what is become of him. And *Onolerea* spake this, whereby to hinder *Lisuart*, and stay him with her. There was at that time near her, *Griliana*, Daughter to the Duke of *Ortilensa*, who had stedfastly regarded the countenances of the two new Lovers; whereby she soon suspected of what had happened to him, and thinking to do them pleasure, she said to *Onolerea*: Madam, may it please you (to th'end that you may avoid some envie, which may beare to my Lady your Sister, by reason of her knew Knight) to receive this Gentleman for yours, who as I understand is about to follow Armes; & believe me, I do not speak this without cause, for it is very reasonable that so fair a young Gentleman should be servant to so fair a young Princess as you are. The Infanta did somewhat blush at these words, which did onely increase her beauty, & emboldened *Lisuart* to answer to *Griliana*: Madam, I humbly thanke you for the good which you wish me, nevertheless knowing the smalness of my deserts, not having as yet done any thing worthy of so great a Princess, I dare not undertake to be hers; but if she will

doe

doe me that favour to accept of me for such a one, I shall thinke my self the happiest man under the Cope of heaven. Yes truly, said *Onolerea*, and from this day forwards I will, and pray for you; *Lisuart* set his knee to the ground, & kissed her hand as the beginning of his service; at these passages the Emperour came in, who after he a long time had talked with the Ladies, hee called a Master of his household, and commanded to lead these Gentlemen to their lodging, in one of the best Chambers in his Pallace. Then supper time being come he sent to seeke them, and royally feasted them untill it was bed time. But *Lisuart* took little rest, for all the night he ceased not to sigh, thinking on her who had called him to her service, of which he esteemed himselfe unworthy, notwithstanding the assurance the Infanta had given him. For which cause after he had long tumbled and tossed himselfe, he could not forbear, but he said within himselfe: Ah, ah, unfortunate *Lisuart*! what is this? hopest thou to gain the place whereunto the merits of thy Father, nay thy Grandfather *Amadis*, were not sufficient to attaine? And thou who art but yet as a simple Gentleman, not so much as a Knight; dost thou thinke to doe more then they dared to undertake? No, no, you abuse your selfe, find some suddain meanes to retire out of this Labyrinth, before you get in further. Then he suddenly changed his minde, but could not take rest on one side or other, but remained in strange paine. *Onolerea* was no lesse on her side; for all the night she ceased not to sigh, having alwaies the great beauty of her Lover before her eyes, for which cause she burned with an unaccustomed fire, causing her an unaccustomed illness. Thus these two Lovers were handled, untill the next morning, that *Lisuart* put himself into the best equipage he could, whereby to return to his former course: and so did *Parmenir*, *Galuanes*, and *Florestan*: who being advertized that the Ladies were at Mass, they went to find them, and as they entred into the Chappel, they perceived *Onolerea* in so good equipage, that she

she seemed to have somewhat of divine nature in her. She had on her a yellow Golden Lock, and a Circle of great Pearls which served her as a Carkanet, and upon it a vail of yellow Taffaty, which adorned her most excellently: *Griliana* was near unto her on her knees, who seconded her so well, that laying aside all affection, it was a hard matter to tell to whom nature had been most favourable: and a little on one side was *Galiana*, and *Bridelena*, and many other Ladyes and Damsels. But had they then asked *Florestan* and *Galuanes* what they thought, without question *Florestan* had been for *Griliana*, because he loved her; and *Galuanes* for *Bridelena*, rather then for the two Infantes; for indeed much might be said of them. But I pray thinke with what devotion these Knights did heare Masse; surely all their prayers and vowes were addressed to those who had (as they thought) power of their life or death; and they would willingly have chosen their Paradise in this little place; on condition the Goddeses whom they in spirit adored, might be made equal to them in affection. And as they were in these termes, the Priest having performed his Office, the Emperour arose: wherefore *Lisuart* and his Companions went to give him the good morrow, and they were conducted from thence into the Hall, where the Tables were covered for Dinner.

How a strange Damsell arrived before the Emperour of Trebisonde, demanding a gift of the Infanta Onolorea, which she too rashly granted, whereof she repented at leisure.



His brave Company of Lords and Ladyes, making the best cheere that could be devised, just as the Muscicall instruments did give notice unto them to rise from the Table: there appeared before them a brave Damsell; but of an extraordinary stature; but so faire that it was admirable. She was clad with a Garment of white cut Satin, and fastned with Buttons of Gold, and great knobs of Orientall Stones: she had on her head a Garland of Flowers, under which Garland was scene so great excellent and incomparable ravishing beauty, that it was sufficient to entertaine the most accomplished man in the World. At her side went two old men, having their Beards reaching downe to their Girdles, being excellently well set forth with threds of Gold and Silke: and behind them was three Knights armed at all points. This Damsell being come before the Emperour, did put her knee to the ground to kiss his hand: but he seeing her in so good equipage, graciously tooke her up, and asked her what she would have. Sir, said she, I humbly entreate you, that you would be pleased to hearken to me, and aid me in what I shall most humbly entreate of you. Yes truly answered the Emperour; Sir, said she, the renowne of your great bounty hath emboldned me to depart from my owne Country, and come into this your Court to find remedy in an affaire which is of great importance to me; neverthelesse, seeing that your custome is to helpe the afflicted (as I have understood) I hope not to be

be the first that shall depart from the presence of your Majesty discontented. No truly answered the Emperour, and you may freely ask what you please, and I will to my power satisfie you. The Damsell most humbly thanked him. Sir said she, seeing that you doe me so much favor, I would intreat you to permit me to aske one boon of my Lady Onolorea your daughter, and joine with me in prayer to her to grant it. Damsell answered the Emperour, I will that my daughter be no less liberall in this case then I am, and I beleve you will finde her so. At these words the Damsell addressed her selfe to Onolorea, and with an humble countenance said to her: Most vertuous and excellent Princesse, I humbly intreat you not to take it ill at my hands, if I address my self to you, as to the most courteous and fairest this day living, to intreat of you one gift which will cost you little: nevertheless it concernes me so neerly, that my life depends thereon. The Infanta having already heard the will of the Emperour, answered to her: Damsell my friend, you shall have of me all that is in my power to grant you. By my God said she, I alwayes thought so: therefore then there remains no more, but that you intreat this faire young Gentleman who sits neer you, that he alone, and without delay, follow me whither I shall conduct him, I being certaine that he will obey you whatsoever you shall command him. Onolorea knowing the fault she committed, by so unadvisedly promising, remained pensive, and in great perplexity, to forsake so soon the thing which she loved the best in the world: To shun which, she answered the Damsell: In good faith, he is so lately come to the Emperour, and I have done so little for him, that he hath good reason to refuse me: but intreat him your selfe, and it may be he will agree to your request. As for me, I have no power over him, as to command him. But Lisuarte being willing to assure the contrary, suddenly arose, and putting his knee to the ground, said to her: Madam, seeing that

you have granted one gift to this Damsel, may it therefore please you to grant me another.

Fair Sir, said she, I am very willing. I intreat you then Madam, said he, to satisfie this which she hath requested of you, and permit me that I follow her by your Command. *Onolorea* knew well that she was beset on every side: wherefore not being able to recoile, she answered him: Goe then, and God be your guide. *Lisuart* humbly thanked her, and said to the Damsel, that he was ready to mount on horseback when she pleased. That shall be presently then answered she. And at that time they both taking their leaves of the Court, departed: But they had hardly passed out of the City walls, when an Esquire presented himselfe before the Emperor, and said to him: Sir, the Duke of *Dardarie* hath been defeated by the King of *Breigne*, and he is now besieged by him, in the Town of *Aurruque*, being readie to be ruined, both he and his people, if you do not send him aid. This news did much trouble the Court, and the Duke of *Opileusa* was suddenly commanded to take with him ten thousand Horsemen, and twenty thousand foot-men to goe presently, and raise the siege: for which he wisely provided. And in these passages *Parmenir*, *Florestan*, and *Galuanes*, Companions of *Lisuart*, tarrying for his return, determined to goe in this expedition. And they intreated the Emperor to tell them the cause, wherefore this war had been enterprized between him and his enemy. My friends answered he, he hath rebelled against me, and hath usurped and taken from me by treason, the Towns of *Breigne* and *Teredie*, being ready to doe worse, if he should be suffered. Sir said *Florestan*, to doe you service, my Companions and I will goe in this service, and will be employed in whatsoever your Lieutenants shall command, wherefore the Emperor thanked them: Nevertheless, before they departed, they went to the Ladies, and *Florestan* addrelling himselfe to *Onolorea*, who was then talking with *Griliana*, said to her: Madam, in waiting for

for the returne of the fair young Gentleman, I will goe (if it may so stand with your good liking) into this war as your Knight: Yet under this Condition, that he being returned to you, you shall restore me to Madam *Griliana*, whose I am, and until then I will leave her my heart in hostage to dispose of, as it shall please her. At these words they began to laugh: and because the Emperesse came neer them, *Onolorea* answered him no otherwise but thus: that God grant they may all return in short time in good health. Nevertheless *Galuanes* entertained *Bridelena*, and said to her with great affection: Madam, command me then, that as yours I may employ my selfe in this enterprize, to the end that being yours, I may with the more ease vanquish your enemies. In good faith, answered she, you shall not be refused in this demand, I doe therefore pray and require you. And taking a Ring from her finger, she gave it him, in confirmation of their alliance. Truly the pleasure which they tooke in talking together, had been longer: But there entred a Dwarfse, the most deformed that could be: who without doing any reverence to the Emperor, or any other, presented to him a Letter, sealed with sixtie seven Seales, which was read before all the Company. And it contained that which follows.

MELIA Ladie over all Magicians, enemy to the Christian Faith, and diligent in daily increasing the law of our Gods. Know Emperor of Trebisonde, that Constantino-
nople shall in short time be besieged by
sixtie seven Princes of the Pagan Law, where I will be
in person, to take the pleasure to see it burned, and
the wicked man that kept it, even he to whom all
Christendome looked for favor, as its Refuge and
principal

principal aid. But it shall happen otherwise: For she to whom thy Daughter hath delivered him, having put him in her power, shall deliver him into so sure guard, that neither Amadis his Grandfather, nor Esplandian his father, although they were not enchanted, should have the power to succour him. And yet that is little in regard of what I intend to doe: for by little and little I will have the rest of your other Knights, to dispose of them at my pleasure, forcing the rest of the Common people to turne to our Faith, be it either by love, or by force: and doubt not of this: for I will doe all without difficulty.

The Emperor, and all the Court were very much troubled at such pitifull news, knowing this Letter to be assuredly written by *Melis* the Enchantresse, and sealed with her seale amongst others, whereon was engraven a woman holding a naked sword in her hand, and a Crosse at her feet. And that which augmented the grief of many was the loss of *Lisuart*, who under the shadow of equity, went joyfully to his death, whereunto the strange Damsel led him; for which cause the *Infanta Onolorea* was so passionate, that she being retired into her Chamber, cast her selfe on her bed, and began to lament with the greatest grief in the world, saying with continual sighes and tears: O Lord of all the world! how hath it pleased you to permit, that I alone should be the cause of all the ill that is to happen to Christendome? Alas cruel death, longed for, and loved by the afflicted! wherefore doe you consent that I live one whole houre, knowing in me the evil that shall redound to so many perions? And speaking these words, *Griliana* came, who knowing part of her affections, doubted that she would fall from bad to worse: for she was ready to swoone at every word. Wherefore taking her in her armes to comfort

fort her, she said: Madam, I did never yet think that you had so little constancie, and I wonder that you will give so much credit to a false witch, who hateth and is enemy to all vertue. Doe you think that our Lord (who is goodnes it selfe) will consent to the ruine of so faire a young Gentleman as is yours? and lesse to the destruction of the holy Faith? These are meere vanities, doe not beleve them, and I pray be not so sad before the time. Alas said *Onolorea*, the fear which I have makes my heart so doubtful, and I would to God that this which you tell me were more true, then I think it to be; for I fear the worst. Madam said *Griliana*, as you are a great Princeesse, you ought to be more perfect then simple maids, who are commonly less endued with Constancie and Magnanimity of Courage, then they who have the title of daughters to a King, or great Princes: therefore be comforted: for if the Letters of *Melis* are such as I think them, you may be very much blamed in doing thus as you doe, and afterwards you may consider of it with repentance. *Griliana* knew so well how to give her so many reasons, that from thenceforth she carried her sadness with more modestie then she had begun. And in the meantime the Emperor consulted about the Army, that he should raise, to goe to the aid of *Constantinople*; the which was retarded until the return of the Duke of *Orsilens*, who dislodged that very same day, and marched so long with his Army, that he encamped within a dayes Journey of the town of *Aurisque*. Of which the king of *Breigne* being advertised, he raised the Seige, and accompanied with an Army of fifteen thousand horsemen, and twentie thousand foot, he marched directly to fight him. *Dardarie* who was besieged had news of this in short time: and for that cause, leaving a good garrison in the Town, he marched on the flanks of his enemy, as well to hinder him from provisions, as to be in the battel, if the Duke of *Orsilens* should give him battel.

CHAP. VIII.

How the Duke of Ortilesa gave battel to the King of Breigne, and of what happened thereupon.



The Duke of *Ortilesa*, with his Army marched so far into the Countrey against the King of *Breigne*, that they had soone tidings by their Scouts of one another, what they purposed to enterprize, which was to meet one another, and give battel. And for this cause the King of *Breigne* raised his Seige, and came hastily against his enemy, who not being willing to be surprized, or otherwise circumvented, he ordered his battel as you shall presently hear. To *Florestan* and *Gassanes* he gave the Van-guard with four thousand horsemen, and eight thousand footmen: and he had the maine battel for himselfe, and the Earle of *Alastra*, a Gentle Knight which consisted of three thousand horsemen, and six thousand chosen souldiers; leaving for the Rear-guard three thousand Souldiers, and other six thousand adventurers, gentle Companions; for whose Leader he ordained *Parmenir*, and *Alarin* of *Ortilesa* his son, to whom the Emperour of *Trebisond* had given the order of Knighthood, the day before he took his leave of him. And in this equipage they marched by little and little neerer to the King of *Breigne*, who had likewise divided his Army into three Squadrons; The first was led by *Groter* his Son; The second by himselfe; and the third by the Duke of *Alinga*. Thus they lodged within two miles of a little Village, where the Duke of *Ortilesa* staid: and setting a good watch for all that night, they did not disturbe one another untill the next morning when they dislodged. And the King sent word to the Duke by a Trumpet, that before noone was passed he would make

make him to know, that he had too rashly enterprized to come seek him. The Trumpet arived at the Camp of his enemy, at the same time that their Captain was in the midst of them, exhorting them in general, and particular of what they ought to doe, and the better to move them to fight, he set before their eyes the treason of of the King, who having falsified his faith was entred into armes against his Prince, and Leige Lord. But so soone as he had seen the Trumpet, and had known the cause of his coming, he sent him back with this answer. Trumpet, say to thy Master that if he were as well endued with Loyalty, as he is with pride and presumption, I should account him one of the gentlest Knights in the world: But because it is impossible to excuse him of his treason against his natural Prince, I have such assurance of his threats (that with Gods help) before the houre that he sends me, I shall have him at my mercy. At that time *Florestan* was present, when the Duke made him this answer, and as the Trumpet was about to returne the way he came, he called him back, and said to him: Trumpet, tell thy Master, that if the Duke had knowne my will, he should have made no answer, for a person taxed with treason as he was, did not deserve the speech of so wise a man. And if he inquires who I am, tell him that I am called *Florestan*, a strange Knight, and am resolved to break his pate this day, being a mortal enemy to all such wicked men as he is. The Trumpet told him that he would obey his commands, and took special notice of what Coat of Armes *Florestan* had on, it being of an azure turquin colour, embroider'd with flowers of Gold. Then he made haste away, and went to the King, to whom he faithfully related all which you have heard: at which he was so greatly angered, that he presently sent to his son to advance, and march forwards with the Van-guard. And so in less then an houres space, the two Armies came so neere together, that they were within a Lance push, when *Groter* sent a Herald to aske for

for *Floreſtan*; who preſently appeared to know what he would have with him. Sir ſaid the Herald, *Groter* the Captaine of this Troop, being the ſon of the King of *Breigne*, deſires to know whether or no you are endowed with as much valor as with injurious ſpeeches: and for that cauſe he earneſtly deſires, that before the two battels doe join, he and you may have one ſingle combate. My friend ſaid *Floreſtan*, let him then withdraw his forces as I will doe mine, and let him come ſo ſoone as he will, to finde (perhaps) that which he ſhall not hereafter looke for. So the Herald tarried not to carry this news to *Groter*, for which cauſe *Floreſtan* on the one part, and he on the other left their guards; and couching their Lances, *Groter* wounded *Floreſtan*'s horſe on the ſhoulder: But *Floreſtan* hit him ſo lively, that piercing his Sheild and Halbert, the Iron went into his body, that through paine he was forced to leave his ſaddle, and meaſure his length on the ground. And as he had ended his courſe, thinking to turne his horſe to perſorme his enterpriſe, the beaſt being very much wounded, died between his legs: in ſuch manner that he found himſelfe on his feet, wherefore he ſoone laid his hand on his Sword, and coming neer to *Groter*, who likewiſe got on his feet, there began between them two a moſt dangerous combate. For they were gentle knights, and of ſo good heart, that *Groter* ſaid to him in deriſion, ſo loud that many did hear him. By God Knight of the Flowers, if I have as bad luck with the Sword as I have had with the Lance, I ſhall be a good man to day inſtead of a better. And this word pleaſed *Floreſtan* ſo well, that for a long time after he cauſed himſelfe to be called by that name which his enemy had given him then. Nevertheleſs he did not make him any answer, but laying faſt hold on his Sheild, he endeavored with utmoſt power to vanquiſh his enemy, but if he did ſo, his enemy did the like, in ſuch manner, that every body did admire how they could hold out ſo long. *Groter* wondred how his enemy could make ſo long reſiſtance,

ſiſtance, wherefore liſting up his ſword, and with all his ſtrength, thinking to take his enemy at advantage, he gave him ſo great a blow, that if *Floreſtan* had not allayed the force of it with his ſhield, his life had been in very great danger. Wherefore being determined to reveng himſelfe, he liſted up his armes, and as *Groter* endeavored to pluck the ſword from the place it was entred, *Floreſtan* wounded him ſo deeply on the head, that he fell down dead, the blood runing downe his face: which the *Breignians* ſeeing, they marched directly againſt their Enemies, and ſo the two Armies joyned together; nevertheleſſe *Floreſtan* was firſt remounted. Then began the heat of all the Battail; for there dyed on both parts, more then two thouſand men. At this firſt charge, *Galuanes*, and one of the Kings Cozens broke their Lances on one another: but *Galuanes* thruſt his Lance into his Enemies body. The King who led the Battell, ſeeing his Van-guard diſcomfited, and ready to turne their backs, he advanced with his Battell, and the Duke of *Ostilenſa* did the like, and alſo the Reare guards on both ſides. There might you have ſcene many good Knights thrown to the ground: and as many Foot-men wounded and killed, which was a moſt pittifull thing to behold. *Galuanes*, *Floreſtan*, and *Parmenir*, ranged about the field, and they met not any, but they went under the edge of their Swords. The Duke of *Ostilenſa* and his Sonne, were not in the meane time idle, but did perſorme memorable deeds of Armes: And on the other ſide, the King of *Breigne*, and the Earle of *Aligne*, Captaine of his Reare-guard, ſhewed well whereſoever they went, that their Armes were not idle. The Earle of *Alaſtra*, met the Earle of *Alingus* ſonne, and with one blow with his Lance, he ſent his ſoule from body; which his Father ſeeing, He, and ten Knights of his, charged on the Earle, who being encompassed on all ſides, was diſarmed and borne downe to the Earth. But *Floreſtan* came there with a good Troop, and remounted him by force, not without great ſlaughter; for there was no place throughout the whole Army where there was

more blood shed. The Earl of *Alinge* gave *Florestan* such a great blow, that his eyes sparkled: of which he soone after revenged himselfe, knocking him to the ground with one blow of a Mace. Then those of the King of *Breignes* Party came hastily to succour him, and the Duke of *Ortisen*sa's party came to take him Prisoner. Then the Conflict began in such manner, that the Horses were up to the Pasterns in blood. And as these two Armies were thus striving for the Victory, the Duke of *Dardary* who had followed the *Breignians* all night with his Troop, seeing so fit a time to imploy himselfe, came upon the flank, and gave them such an Alarum, that from that time they began by little and little to faint. At this time the King of *Breigne* was joynd with the Duke of *Ortisen*sa, thinking to revenge the injury he had done him, calling him Traytor: but the ill fell on himself, and he lay there dead. For as hee traversed throw the Battell, striking on every side, and performing deeds worthy to a Prince; by fortune he met the Duke, whom he called to the Combate; the which the other refused not, although he were very old. And to say the truth, the party had beene ill maintained, without the arrivall of *Florestan*, who soone adventured his person to the succour of the Father of his Ladie, who had by love taken him Captive. For which cause he rushed in between them, and with one blow he so wounded the King, that he separated his soule from his body, at which his Souldiers were so affrighted, that as well through this occasion, as for the arrivall of the Duke of *Dardarie*, they fled, leaving the hopes of their lives to some adjoyning Woods where they might save themselves. But their Enemies did slaughter so many, that they were forced to be content to pardon their lives, being weary with fighting and killing them. By this means the Duke of *Ortisen*sa won the field, who received the Duke of *Dardary* with great joy; and at that instant they sent a Gentleman towards the Emperour, to whom they sent word of the good fortune that God had been pleased to bestow on them. But now it is time to turne our course, where

where we have left *Lisuart*, and the Infanta *Onolere*, and her sister *Gricilerea*: they being both in great sorrow for the absence and losse of those, whom they had chosen for their Lovers, as you have formerly heard.

CHAP. IX.

How Lisuart was led to Melia the Sorceresse, and of the bad entertainment and ill usage she gave him.



You have already heard the sorrow and sadness, which the Infanta *Onolere* made, as well for the Letter which *Melia* the Sorceresse sent by the Dwarf to the Emperour, as for the absence of *Lisuart*, to whom she was so affectionate: Now I thinke seasonable to let you know who she was that led him, and the occasion why she used this deceit. Know then that the enterprize of the sixty seven Pagan Kings, upon the City and Empire of *Constantinople*, was divulged in so many places, that the King of the Giant Island purposed to be of the number: not for any ill which he wished to the Emperour: but to the end that one onely Daughter which he had, might learn of *Melia*, part of the skill for which she was so renowned; and therefore he would carry her thither, and present her to her. This Damsell of whom I speake, was so excellent in beauty, that there was no woman in all the adjoyning Isles that could equall her, and her name was *Gradafilea*. So the King of the Giant Island departed from his owne Country, and carryed his Daughter with him, being accompanied with two thousand Knights, with whom he travelled so long, that at last he came to King *Arimate* and *Melia*: of whom he was kindly welcomed; especially of the Sorceresse *Melia*, who seeing the perfect beauty of *Gradafilea*, she purposed to put that soone into execution, which she had a long time before projected, which

was the taking of *Lisuart*. And to come to the point, this was *Gradaflea* who led him from the Court of the Emperour of *Trebisond*, as you have already heard. And to say truly *Melia* could not have found a messenger so fit to execute such treason. for she was such a one as I have told you, and as well spoken as any Damsell of her time: for which cause it was easie to make him believe her, and obey her. Know then that the occasion which moved *Melia* to wish this young Prince so much harm was, because she knew for certain by her damnable and diuinish art, that he would be the ruine of the Pagans, and a sure Rampart to all *Thrace*: to hinder which, she sent *Gradaflea* into *Trebisond*, to th'end she might bring him thither; but she hid from her her resolution, which was to kill him soon after, which God would not permit; but rendred this Damsel so affectionate towards him, and so taken with his love, that day and night she thought of nothing more, then how she might gaine him, and make him her husband. And thus they journied so long together, that they arived at the Camp of the King *Armato*; and untill then, *Lisuart* did not know unto what part he was led. So the King was very joyfull at his arivall, for he had understood of *Melia*, the danger whereinto the Pagans should fall if he lived. And as *Gradaflea* did present him to him; Cruell *Melia* being impatient, arived; who caused him presently to be taken by four villaines, and putting a great chain of Iron about his neck, she said to him; wicked villaine, now you shall have the order which you deserve; afterwards I will lodge you in a place, where I will answer for you when I please. *Lisuart* being greatly astonish'd at this entertainment, looked on *Gradaflea* with a pittifull eye, and could not forbear saying thus to her: Truly Damsell, I never thought treason could be harboured with so great beauty where-with you are endew'd; but seeing that disloyalty is so familiar there where it should be strangest, I will never trust any creature where I am not better acquainted. So *Gradaflea* could not answer him one word; for she was so much

grieved

grieved at his ill usage, that she could willingly have been dead, for she loved him with all her heart. Wherefore seeing that she could not succour him, unlesse it were by entreaty, crying tenderly, she cast her selfe downe at the feet of *Armato*, and said to him; Sir, I humbly entreat of you, that he who hath confided in me, may receive no injury: for you will doe me wrong, and I may justly be accused of treason, which never happened to any other of my Linage. But the King turned his head on one side, and without answering, he commanded to imprison *Lisuart*, and that hee should be put in the furthest part of the Dungeon. Sir, said she, I will never depart from your feet, if you consent to such an out-rage; at least doe me this pleasure, that his person be in an honest place, and without being chained as a Rogue; otherwise assure your selfe, that I will complaine of you all my life, and in all places wheresoever I shall come. And as she was in these vehement passions, her Father arived, who being abashed to see his Daughter so sad, and the injury which was done to him that had followed her, he was not afraid, but freely spake his mind; for which cause, *Armato* fearing to anger him, agreed to his Daughters request, although said he, this be contrary to all reason: for if you or she should know of what importance the death of this Rascal is, you would both give iudgement of death against him. So *Lisuart* was unchained, and put into a strong Tower, of which *Melia* kept the Key: and besides she appointed thirty Knights for his guard, of which fifteen watched untill mid-night, and the rest untill day: So God give him patience and provide for him, otherwise his death is near, as we shall recite in the following Chapters.

But first know that the Gentleman sent from the Duke of *Ortlenz*: to the Emperour, arived at *Trebisond*. and related to him at large: the Battell that had been between his Army, and that of the King of *Breigne*, and the death of Him, and his Sonne; and lastly, the totall defeat of his Enemies. For which the Emperour greatly praised our Lord, and

for

for the great care which he had, he caused it to be often times related by the Messenger, even before the Ladies: and believe me, he did not forget the great deeds of Armes, and prowesses of *Florestan*, *Galuanes*, and *Parmenir*. If then *Griliana* and *Bridelenz* were well pleased, doe not doubt, they loved these knights as their owne proper soules. And for this cause, being retyred into the Chamber of *Onolereaz*, they began a debate between them for pleasure who was the best loved: and this they did to please the Infanta; who ever since the loile of *Lisuart*, ceased not to grieve. Their debate lasted so long, that at the last *Bridelenz* being more pleasant then any of the rest, tooke a Pillow, and being of a light heart, threw it at the head of *Griliana*, saying to her: My knight loves me best, and I will prove it with the blow of my Mall; *Griliana* tooke another, and this Combate began so fierce, that it forced the melancholick to laugh, for there was not a Pillow that was not thrown without great laughter. Then being out of breath, *Gricilereaz* went betweene them, and so this tourney ended: therefore we will leave them to rest, and so will returne to *Perion* of *Gaule*, of whom we have been silent so long.

CHAP. X.

How Perion of Gaule, surnamed the Knight of the Sphere, met the Infanta Tiriaza; and of the many faire adventures which happened to him.



You may remember that we formerly left *Perion* with *Languires*, *Abies* of *Ireland*, and the three crossed Knights, refreshing themselves in the Arbor which had beene made by the Apes, being Pilots and Leaders of the Barque of *Aiqueta*. Now then (prosecuting our History) as these Knights related their passed fortunes, *Perion* asked of *Tal-*
lanque

lanque if he heard any news of *Garinter* and his brother, who had been made Knights by the hand of *Esplandian*, as you have heard in the fifth Book, and afterwards they passed into the Island of *Californus*. Sir, answered he, we have now left him in hard and strong war against a certaine King, and my neer Neighbour, and they have already conquered many faire places from him. And what adventures then brought you in these Marches? Quoth *Perion*. No other, answered *Talanne*, but the renowne of this Fountaine, where it is reported there doth ordinarily happen marvellous and strange adventures: and although that it was our intention to return presently to *Californus*, we will not now depart so soon from you, seeing that God and fortune hath caused us to meet. I like this well, said he, you will doe me a pleasure: for I cannot depart from this place, until she who brought me hither cometh againe to finde me, and so I have promised her: but she being returned, I will so far prevaile with her, that I will follow her, or she shall give me leave to goe with you. And as he spake these words he perceived a Hart greatly wounded, followed by a Gentleman, having a horne about his neck very richly garnished, and between his legs a Turkish horse running marvellous swift. So he was closely followed by another Gentleman, clothed with the like habiliments: but not altogether so brave. These two rode so fast after the Hart, that they did not see the Knights, untill the beast was dead: they were in their Arbor, out of which nevertheless they issued, and mounted on horseback, when they saw the first Gentleman alight, and draw his knife to have the head of the beast. And as they looked about them, the other discovered *Perion*, and the rest of his Companie, bearing signes of Christians on their Harneasses: wherefore he rode straight to them, and the first to whom he addressed himselfe was the Queen *Calasea*, to whom he cried ere he came neer: Ah good Knight! for Gods sake pitie me and save me; for I am of the same

Law that you are of: Gentleman, answered the Queen, there is none in this Company, that will not willingly doe you pleasure. The other who heard this speech, lifted up his head, and seeing such a company, left his prey: and thinking to put his feet in the stirrop to flie, he was held by his companion, who said to him; At this time you shall be my Prisoner, as well as I have been yours. And as the one endeavoured to escape, and the other to hold him, there issued out of the thick wood six Knights armed at all points, whom eight Gentlemen without Harnesse followed, conducting a Damsel faire in every perfection: who was accompanied with two women, mounted and furnished as the Daughters of great Lords, as they were. The six Knights seeing *Perion*, and those of his Company at the first sight that they were Christians: wherefore pulling downe the visor of their Helmets, they cryed out aloud, that they were dead. I know not said he of the Sphere what may come, but God be thanked, now there is none of us sick. And because the others couched their Lances against them, they placed themselves to resist them, and they gave the Pagans such blowes with their Lances, that they were all thrown dead to the ground at the first attempt: wherefore the eight that were disarmed fled, as fast as their horses could run. Thus the Ladies remained without guard, to the principal and chiefe of them *Perion* first addrested himselfe, and graciously said to her: In good faith Madam, I never obtained any Conquest as I know, that pleased me so well as this. Of one thing I will assure you, that all the prison you shall have with me, it shall be this, that I will employ my utmost power to doe you service, as I am accustomed to doe to all faire ones as resemble you. At these words *Tirixax*, so was this Lady called, did begin to cry extreemely, and in sighs, she answered *Perion*: Alas! I know well, pleaseth it me or no, that I am your prisoner, at which I am grieved: nevertheless, I have so good an opinion of your honesty,

honesty: that so long as I am with you I shall not be dishonored: No upon my soule, said he, but I will put my life in danger to guard you, that no dishonor be done to you; wherefore I pray you follow me and your women also. Then he tooke her by the reines of her Palfrey and led her to the Arbor: but as she passed by where the former Combate had been, she saw the Giant and the others lie along on the grasse, at which she was fore grieved, that she cryed with a great crye, saying, Alas! now I esteeme my life lesse then I did before: when I saw with my eyes *Brutillon* the valiant, and his Knights dead, and defeated! And for Gods sake, said she, to the Knight of the Sphere, recount unto me how this ill fortune hath come unto them. Madam said *Perion*, these are hazards, and fortunes which often happen to them that seek them; And then he declared to her the manner of the fight, and how it began, and what was the issue. And as they were in this discourse, the Crossed Knights brought with them the two Gentlemen that hunted the Hart. Then *Perion* leaving *Tirixax* with *Calasea*, tooke apart the eldest of them, and asked him what he was, and the Damsel also. Sir answered he, she and he who was taken with me are the King of *Jerusalem* Children: who to give them pleasure and recreation sent them to the Fountaine, under the conduct of *Brutillon* the Giant, to see the marvels which happen here daily: And beleieve all said he, your long tarrying here may redound to your great danger, for the King their father is not above halfe a dayes journey from hence, who will not faile to have newes suddenly of those that fled, of the misfortune happened to his Children, of which he will soone be revenged, as he may well doe, being accompanied with a great company of Souldiers, even of three strong Giants, brothers to him whom you have killed, which he hath caused to come out of the Desart of *Lybia*, to accompany him to the Seige of *Constantinople*, where all the Princes of *Asia*, great and small, even beyond the

Mount *Caucasus* and the great *Armenia*, have sworne to destroy it and raceit: therefore if you be well advised, you had best to retire before worse happen to you. And you, said the Knight of the Sphere, are you of their kindred? no, answered the Gentleman, I am son to the King of Naples, and was not long since taken by *Brutallion*, who romes on the Sea, as I was agoing to the chase, in the Company of six of My Knights *Perion*. was greatly grieved, having heard the enterprize of the Pagans on *Thrace*: nevertheless he did not discover his grief, but went downe into the Grove with the rest. Whether *Alquesa* came loone after, who being arived, cast her selfe at the feet of *Perion*, to kisse them, but he graciously tooke her up, and said to her: By my God, Damsel, your returne hath very much gladded me, you are very welcome. Good Knight answered she, my Father desires humbly to be remembered to you, as he who is more obliged to you, then to any other living. Your father said *Perion*? I never saw him as I know. Ahah! answered she, it was the old man that was bound in the Cart, who was neere unto his death; had it not been for the good aid which he received of you: but you have delivered him from the most cruel torment that ever any man of his age indured. And know sir Knight, that he by his skill foreknew all his misfortune, which he could not remedie, onely by the head of one of the Sons of *Amadis de Gaulle*: for which reason he commanded me to go seek you, and prevaile so far, that I might bring you hither at the day and houre as you have found him. Now you may know why I commanded you not to speak in the Court of the Emperor of *Trebisond*, fearing that by knowing you, my enterprize would be hindred, which is now effected, for which I praise God and you. I wonder said *Perion*, that he did not discover himselfe to us. Ah ah sir! said she, you shall see him another time at more leisure, so it is that he hath commanded me to tell you, that he is gone into the Isle of *Apes*, which is his own; but

in what Countrey soever he is you shall finde him to be an affectionate servant to acknowledge the paines, that you have taken for him, and the good which he hath received by your meanes. And as for the promise which you have made me, it is so well performed, that from henceforth you may goe whither soever you please. Damsel answered *Perion*, if I had knowne him, I promise you, that for your sake, I would have done him all the honor which he deserves: Nevertheleis that shall be an other time, when he shall please. And seeing that you give me leave, to morrow, if it please God, I will goe seek the Company, wherein I was when you saw me first.

CHAP. XI.

How the Knight of the Sphere and his Companions met the souldan of Liquie, and of the Combate which was between them.

SO long did *Perion* and *Alquesa* talke together, that after they had eaten of such victuals as they found, they went to sleep, and likewise so did the rest until the next morning, when as they prepared themselves to mount on Horseback. Then the Knight of the Sphere asked *Languines* and *Abies* of Ireland, what way they intended to take. Sir answered *Abies*, I thinke it best that *Languines* and I goe straite to *Constantinople*, to aid the Emperor. Truly said *Perion*, I am of your opinion. And you said he, to the Croised Knights, will yee be on their side? No truly answered they, not at the present; for we will goe directly to *Californus*, and there we will assemble men from all parts, with whom we will come after to finde them, if it pleaseth God if so

be the news of the Seige continues. I assure you said *Perion*, I will be there, and therefore I pray doe not faile. Then they mounted on horseback, taking their way to the Sea-side: but they had not gone far, when they heard a noise and neighing of horses, and soone after they saw ten Knights issue out of the wood, being well mounted and armed, before whom marched one who was greater then any of the others, holding in his hand a great and strong Lance, at the end whereof did hang a very faire and compleat streamer. His armes were all black, covered with Gold and Diamonds, and many faire precious stones: and his Countenance declared him to be a great Lord, and Captaine of all the rest. The Knight of the Sphere had an extraordinary great desire to know his name. The Queen *Calasea* had oftentimes seen him, wherefore she easily knew him, and assured *Perion* that it was *Radiare* great Souldan of *Liquie*: with whom said she, I entered the field, by reason of a Defiance which we sent to *Constantinople*, to two of your nearest parents, *Amadis* and *Esplandian*. By God answered *Perion*, this makes me have the greatest desire to combat with him. And at that instant he laced his Helmet, and tooke his Lance, marching strait to the other, who seeing him, cried out to him very loud: Knight who art arrived black as I am, before you and I enter into Combate, I would intreat you to tell me your name, and of what Countrey you are of. Truly said the Knight of the Sphere, you shall not in any wise be refused for so small a matter: My Countrey is great Brittain, and at this time I serve the fairest Ladie in the world, and as yet I neither know her name, neither have I as yet deserved so much favor for the beginning. By my head, said *Radiare*, thou speakest like one of a stout heart, and I am very glad that I have met at so good a time, a Knight of a Countrey of which commonly there comes none but valiant men, and I and mine have many times found them to be such. And to the end that

that you may not think my speeches to be feigned, if you will follow me and be mine, I will make you captaine General of the Army which I have raised, to goe to *Constantinople*; but if you disdain my side, instead of so much good you shall presently dye by my hands. See how ill it is, said *Perion*; it may be you may have more occasion to threaten me then you think for, for you cannot have a greater enemy in the world then I. Is it possible answered the Soldan, then keep your selfe from me if you can: neverthelesse you shall receive this courtesie at my hands, that none of my men shall assaile you, but onely one by one. Then he called him that was nearest to him, to whom he commanded to fight with *Perion*, and not one jot to spare him: But he reckoned without his Host, for at the first meeting the Pagan was disarmed, and remained stretched out on the grasse, moving neither hand nor foot. Wherefore *Radiare* commanding another to come who was handled as his fellow, and so were five more that followed after: At which the Soldan wondred, having brought (as he thought) the flower of Chivalry of his Countrey, he then commanded the eighth in whom he put much confidence, to revenge his Companions: And presently he and the Knight of the Sphere broke upon one another, in such manner that their Lances flew into peeces, and in passing they met together with their shields, bodies and heads so strongly, that the Pagan fell downe astonished in the place. Which the Queen *Calasea* seeing, she could not forbear longing, and she sent *Alquesa* to carrie her Lance to *Perion*, praying him on her part, Seeing his owne had been so well employed, that he would indeavor to doe as much with that other. *Perion* humbly thanked her by the Damsel, and by reason that the ninth Pagan was ready to run, he used no long discourse with her, but onely he sent word by her to the Queen that he would esteeme himselfe one of the best runners with the Lance in the world, if he knew as much as she had forgotten. And at this point the Pagan and he charged one another, and

and their Lances flew in pieces, *Perion* remaining on Horseback, and the other thrown downe so heavily, that hee thought he had broke his neck: wherefore the tenth came to the sport, who did hit *Perion* so rightly, that he made him to stoope, but he soone after revenged himselfe; for he thrust his Lance through his body more then a handfull in length, and he fell downe to the ground dead, the Trunchion remaining in his Cuts. This is wonderfull said the *Queene Calisea* to *Talanque*. I never saw a fairer Iust; I pray you faire Sir, send him also your Lance, to th'end that he may performe so glorious an enterprize. To the which *Talanque* agreed, wherefore she called *Alquesa*, and said to her; Damsell, returne to the Knight of the Sphere, and say to him, that he hath much honoured the wood wherein you have brought him, in hitting the Pagan so right on the belly, and that for the love of his Lady, hee would yet doe as much to this other. So *Alquesa* tarried not long to carry this message, which so greatly augmented the force of the Knight of the Sphere, that he assured the Messenger to employ his whole power, untill he had the Souldan his prisoner, or he would lose his owne life in the adventure: But *Radiare* thought much otherwise, and prepared himselfe to revenge the death of *Grimante*, which was the fore-named Knight that was last foyled, swearing by his great God, that *Perion* should doe Penance for this offence. To obtaine which, he approached to him, and said, Knight, I have more cause to hate you then any man that I know, and nevertheless for the great prowess that is in you, I am constrained to esteeme of you, and beare you this honour, that if you will be on my side, as I have not long since told you, I will utterly forget the evill which I owe you; and I will likewise doe much good for you. Truly answered the Knight of the Sphere, I will counsell you a great deale better, if you will believe me. How said *Radiare*? Leave thy foolish Faith, answered the Knight, and acknowledge *Jesus Christ* to be alone God; not the Idolls, and Devils which abuse you; and instead

of doing hurt to the Emperour of *Constantinople* as you have enterprized, aid and helpe him with all your power, then will we be friends, and not else. You need not doubt whether *Radiare* was inflamed with Ire, as hee soon made the Knight of the Sphere understand in saying to him: How, doe you give counsell to those that doe not aske? doe you thinke to tame me so? No, no, before you escape my hands, I hope to chastise you in such sort, that you shall never speak so rashly to a man of my quality. And nevertheless before we enter into Combate, heare the Covenant that I propound to those against whom I fight, then if you like it, you may agree to it; if not, I leave it to your discretion. Say what you will said *Perion*, and I will willingly hearken to you: The vanquished, said *Radiare*, shall be slave to the vanquisher, in such manner, that he shall obey him in all things: Consider then if you will consent to it. By God, answered *Perion*, you speak like a Prince of a good heart; and I love this custome so well, that I will performe it on my part without falsifying my word. Then guard your selfe from me said the Souldan. Then they separated themselves, and giving the Careere to their Horses, they met so strongly, that *Radiare* and his Horse were bast to the ground; and *Perion*'s Horse had his shoulder broken; for which cause he stopped, and fell downe under his Master: but first their Lances flew in pieces. And as both their falls were strange, so they relieved themselves so lightly, as if they had not endured one blow nor buffet: and marching with great fierceness, they laid their hands on their swords; beginning a Combate so furious, and with so heavy blowes, that none saw them that were not astonished: For they so laboured and renewed their strengths, as it seemed that the grasse was dyed with their blood, and the ground covered with the broken pieces of their Armour; so that every one thought that their death was neare. And they maintained themselves in this estate, without taking breath, untill it was noone; but the Souldan went on one side, and said to *Pe-*

Perion, Knight, I thinke that we should not take example of wild beasts, angred with one another in our Combate: but the common custome of Knights that beare Armes doe use; therefore I pray you let us take breath, then let us begin againe when you please. I am content, answered *Perion*, not that I seeke for rest, but you have shewed your self so courteous to me, in forbidding your Knights not to assault me altogether, that I shall thinke the better on you the longest day that I live. So they remained still, resting themselves on the pummels of their swords: Nevertheless this stay lasted not long, for soon after they recharged one another better then before; and the Souldan pressed on *Perion* so neere, that the blood ran downe on all sides, whereof he soon revenged himself, giving him such a blow with his sword, that it entred more then a handfull in length into his shield, which he cut in twaine; and as he employed all his force to pull it out, he constrained him to set his knee to the ground. Neverthelesse he soone arose, and in rising, he gave the Knight of the Sphere so great a blow, that had it not been for the goodnesse of Armour, he had cleaved his head in twain. Then *Perion* knowing the danger wherein he was, took his sword in both his hands, and rushed on *Radiare* with all his force, in such manner that both his eyes sparkled, remaining so stunned that he began to reele, and *Perion* took hold of his Coller, throwing him so heavily to the ground, that he had the meanes to take of his Helmet, and threw it away, *Radiare* being stunned, perceiving the aire, began to recover. How? said the Knight of the Sphere, doth your courage faile you for so small a matter? Where is now this glory and magnanimity of courage, for which you are so renowned in so many places? At these words the Souldan opened his eyes; and as he saw himselfe in danger of death, and the sword lifted up, ready to fall on his head, he answered him: The magnanimity whereof you speak, remains in the heart of the Souldan of *Liquea*, from whence it shall neither depart nor lessen, for whatsoever perill may happen.

pen. Yes, but said the Knight of the Sphere, doe not you remember the Covenant sworne between you and I? I know it, answered he; and I would have you to know, that if I have my carriage firme, my speech is as much, or more stable and certaine: in such manner, that I had rather lose ten lives, if I had them, then the least thing of my promise, should not be executed in the least point. Therefore make use of me as of your slave: for I am ready to endure whatsoever your pleasure shall be. Truly said *Perion*, you doe manifest your selfe to be such a one as you are renowned for; so I will use you with the honesty which you deserve: Therefore rise, and remount on Horse back, and afterwards we will take of the rest: which they did, and soon after the crossed Knights approached. Then the Queen *Calasea* came near, and her head being bare, she came to embrace the Souldan, crying to him: Seignior *Radiare*, seeing that you and I have so well tryed the strength of the Christians as you know, I pray you assure your selfe that you can have no advantage over them, they being supported by a God who is alone Master and Lord of all things: Likewise it was a folly for you to joyne your selfe in Combate with this Knight, who is brother to the Emperour *Esplandian*, and son to the most renowned *Amadis de Gaule*, by whom you and I were vanquished in the last siege of *Constantinople*, as you may well remember. Madam, said he, If I committed folly, I have dearly paid for it; and although that it is a grief to me, so likewise I have great pleasure to see you in good health, remembring me as yet of the fortunes which we had together even in the last voyage into *Thrace*. And by reason that they lost blood which came out of the wounds of both their bodies, before they went further, they had them bound up; and from thence, fearing the arrivall of the King of *Jerusalem*, and the succour of the Children which they had taken, they went towards the Sea side, where they then found the Vessells in which they had taken Port, even that of *Abies* of *Ireland*, and *Languines*, into which the Knight of the Sphere

embarqued himselfe. And because that *Alquesa* would returne to her Father, who staid for her in the Isle of *Apes* as you have heard; she humbly entreated of *Perion* to give her leave. My great friend said he, I pray God guide you: but if you will doe so much for me as to grant me one gift, which shall cost you little, there shall be no day of my life wherein you shall not have of me a Knight ready to obey you. How? answered she, doe you thinke that I will refuse any thing that you shall please to command me? no truly, were it to adventure the greatest part of my life. Then *Perion* took her apart, and they two being alone, he said to her in sighs: Ah, ah, *Alquesa*! I thought to have taken an other course, and returne towards Madam *Gricilerea*, to serve her, as she to whom my heart is so affectionate, that thinking on her I die, and not thinking on her I cannot live! God grant then that this beginning take so good a conclusion as I hope for, and doe me so much favour that she may name me hers; for testimony whereof, I have thought to send her by you the Infanta *Tiriana*, with her bother, and the Souldan of *Liquet*, whom I pray you to carry to her, and present to her on my part: for even as I am hers, it is reasonable that those things that are mine and which I have conquered should serve her, and be hers. You shall tell her that my returne unto *Trebisond* shall be the soonest that I can possibly, and that in the mean time I hope not to strike one blow with a Lance, nor to doe an act worthy a Knight, but what shall be for the glory and love of her. Sir, answered *Alquesa*, I will wholly performe that which you command me; and I will serve you with her, with so much loyalty, that you shall perceive it. I entreat you doe it said *Perion*. Then approaching near to the Souldan, who in the mean time discoursed with *Tiriana*, complaining to her, that for the desire which he had to see the King her Father, he was fallen into the hands of his enemies. But the Knight of the Sphere interrupted them in their talke, causing them to understand his pleasure: in pursuance whereof he said to the Souldan, you shall

shall goe with your Knights, and you Madam with your Brother, and you women, whether this Damsell will conduct you, and there you shall be welcome for my sake. When *Tiriana* heard these words, she redoubled her teares, and she sorrowfully answered: Sir Knight, I am in your power, and sounwilling to live, that I would I were now dead. Madam, said *Perion*, I hope you wil have more comfort then you thinke for: And for your part Seignior *Radiare*, according to the promise which we have joyntly made together, I will (that you being arived at the place whereunto I send you) that you suddenly dispatch two of your men, to go advertize your Subjects that none of them stir against the Emperour of *Constantinople*, but rather that they favour him in all that they can. Pardon me answered he, my word was obliged to another before you. You may command me whatsoever you please, but as for my faith it is more then my person. I have promised and sworne to succour the King *Armato*, in all and through all: and as I have told you, my life shall sooner end then my faith be broken. Truly said *Perion*, and then I will not doe it, and I should be very sorry that through my occasion the word, of so great a Lord, and so wise a man should be falsified. But follow the Damsell, and untill I shall see you againe, I commit you to God. Then the Souldan, *Tiriana*, and the others, tooke their leaves of him, and entring into the barque of *Alquesa*, the Knight of the Sphere said to her, I humbly entreat you Damsell, humbly to salute on my behalfe the Princeesse *Cnolerea*, and all the other Ladies of the Court: having said so he approached near her, and secretly gave her a Letter to present to *Gricilerea*. Then the wind being faire, the *Apes* began to row, taking the best way for their journey.

CHAP. XII.

How the Knight of the Sphere, Abies of Ireland, and Languines, arrived at Constantinople; and of the great good welcome which the Emperour made them.



*L*quesa being thus dispatched, conducting to *Tchifera* the Souldan of *Liques*, *Tiriuxa* and her Brother, accompanied with their Train, The Knight of the Sphere embarked with *Abies* of Ireland, *Languines*, and the King of *Naples* his Sonne, recommending to Gods keeping those who would returne to *Calijurnus*. So they driven by a South-west wind to so good purpose, that without happening on any adventure, they arrived at *Constantinople* the eighth day following: Of which the Emperour being advertized, was marvellous and exceeding joyfull, for he thought that *Lisuart* his Grand-child was in his Company: wherefore he went to receive them. And as *Perion*, *Abies*, and *Languines* did reverence him, *Frاندalo* advanced to embrace *Perion*; and in embracing him, hee said to him: Sir Knight, I am so much yours, that you may command me, as he who desires to obey you for the honour of King *Amadis*, and *Esplandian* your Brother, whose friend a very much affectionate servant I am. The Knight of the Sphere had never seen him; wherefore the Emperour said to him, my sonne, you may well have heard speak of the Earl of *Frاندalo*; this is he who presents you his service, and he is the very same to your friends, as he hath witnessed to you. In good faith Sir, answered *Perion*, he presents me with nothing but what he shall have of me when he pleaseth, and that not without cause, for his great goodnesse and prowess is so known and recommended throughout the world, that he may account himself happy that hath his acquaintance. By my soul, said *Frاندalo*, in embracing you, I may well say I have within my armes, the

the true effigies and portraiture of the flower of all Chivalrie, And this he said, for asmuch as *Perion* did wholly resemble *Esplandian* his brother, the remembrance of whom struke the Emperour to the Heart, that the tears came from his eyes, and at that instant the Knight of the Sphere presented unto him the Prince *Adriuel*, saying to him: Sir behold the Heire of the King of *Naples*, who, if it so please God may one day doe you service; The Lad set his knee to the ground, to kisse his hands: but the Emperour graciously tooke him up, making him very welcome: then they went up into the Palace, and leading the Knight of the Sphere by the hand, he lead him towards the Empreffe, to whom the Emperour in entring said: Madam, behold your son returned, nothing is now wanting but your daughter, who in time we shall have. The Knight of the Sphere made great obeysance to her, and the Empreffe arose for to kisse him, and in kissing him, she said to the Emperour: By my God Sir, you have done well, to bring me that thing which of all things in the world I most desire to see; and so I know certainly that my son is enchanted, all the world together shall not make me believe, that this Knight is not *Esplandian*. Then she came to embrace *Adriuel*, *Languines*, and *Abies* of Ireland: and because it was dinner time, the Emperour commanded the Tables to be covered in the great hall: for he would eat in publique, for the love of the new come Knights. *Frاندalo* was come but that same day, and he was sent for the occasion of the Pagans great preparation to returne into *Thrace*, for which cause all the Court was very sorrowful: But that which troubled them more was, that as the last course was serving, a great whirlwinde beat against the windowes, and soone after a great clap of thunder mingled with lightning, that all the Companie thought they had been buried quick: and not without cause: for the darknesse continued for above a quarter of an houre so black, that the cleereft sighted there could not see the greatest of the Companie. And as
this

his darknesse vanished, there appeared in the aire, in the middle of the Hall, a flaming Sword, tainted with blood, at the end whereof hung a writing of Parchment, sealed with a great seale of Gold, which the Emperor caused presently to be reached downe, to see what was therein contained. And there was found written these words,

MELIA the Infanta, the cruellest enemy of all Christendome, to thee Emperor of Constantinople, ruine and entire curse. Know that you shall in short time perceiue the evill, which is prepared for you through my occasion, such as the like was never heard spoken of: for thou shalt see with thine owne eyes the death of thine, the destruction of thy Countrey, a strange martyring in the person whom thou lovest best in this world, and lastly, the end of thy life in miserie. In Testimony whereof, this Sword shall remaine in the aire neere thy great Citie, untill that a Prophecie of Apolidon, which remaines to be accomplished, shall be effected. Then shall it vanish and be no more seen.

This writing being read, every one remained abashed, and the sword flew upright, remaining in the aire fixed as a true Commet. But this rumour was hardly appeased, when another was heard through the Towne, and it proceeded by reason of two Giants: who are entred even as far as the Palace: leading a Giantesse so richly habited, that the Diamonds and Pearls of her Robes were unsteemable. And she had on her head a Circle of Gold, so well wrought, and of so rare workmanship, that it was reported the workman had been ten years in working of it, and had done nothing else. These Giants were armed

at

at all points, except the Head peece and Gaultlets: and they were accompanied with twentie other Knights of the same furniture. Which being come to the Emperors knowledge, he doubted of treason, wherefore he and his ran hastily to armes: and in the meane time the rest wrapped their mantles about their armes, and holding their swords in their hands, they purposed to keep the entrance of the Palace. Where soone after the Giants arived, in such equipage as you have heard; the ancientest of which gave signe of Peace, praying some body to conduct him before the Imperial Majestie, the which was done. And being arived there they set their knees to the ground, and the old Giant began to speake in this manner. Most puissant Emperor, those who know me commonly call me *Argamont* the valiant. This Ladie which I conduct, is my wife, named *Almaraz*, and this other is my Granchilde, son to my Daughter named *Ardadil Canile*. And we all have not long since adored false and lying Idols; but now we beleve in Iesus Christ by the meanes of two Knights, the one called *Quedragant*, and the other *Vaillides*; with whom I combated, and they vanquished me in the Frontiers of the Ile of the *Fueille Blanche*, which is mine: and they were so courteous to me, that I having the worst in the Combate, they saved my life, under this condition, that I should obey their good pleasure. Then he declared how all happened between them. To which the Emperor tooke a singular great pleasure: and they did them great Honor, and made them very welcome, especially by the Knight of the Sphere and his Companions, praying with great affection the good beginning of Knighthood, which was in *Quedragant* and *Vaillides*, of whose affaire they being desirous to know further, they requested of the two Giants to tell them where they had left them. Sirs, answered *Argamont*, as soone as they saw me out of danger, and my wounds closed, they prayed me to come, and attend them in this place: at that instant they imbarqued them-

K

selves

selvesto goe in search of a Knight, for whose absence they were grieved, assuring me nevertheless, that if within foure moneths they had no tidings of him, they would without further delay come to this City, attending the Seige of the Pagan Princes: of which sir, said he, to the Emperor, you have been already advertised, and behold my son, who can tell you for certaine, as he who hath been present in a great Muster and Assembly which they had; I have scarcely knowne the halfe said the Emperor, I pray God help me. And in saying thus the tears fell from his eyes, for he much doubted the threats of *Melia*: For asmuch as the writing contained the ignominious death of the person which he loved best in the world. He well knew the Enchantment as well of his son as of his Daughter, and therefore he feared that this injurie would fall upon *Lisuart*, whom he thought to be safer then in the hands of the Enchantresse: but he was deceived, as you have formerly heard. So the Giants and their traine were magnificently received, and the Emperor gave them faire presents, even having understood of *Argamont* that he would not depart from thence so long as he should have need of them, but that they would faithfully serve him, according to what they had sworne to *Vaillides* and *Quedragant*. And as they were in this discourse, news came by a Scout, that without doubt the Pagans were already assembled in great Companies in the Isle of *Tenedos*, and purposed to dislodge about the end of the ensuing month, for which cause the Emperor called his Councell, where it was concluded, that Messengers should be dispatched, some to *Sardini*, and *Scicilia* (and in their passage they should informe the King of Naples, *Aldariels* father, the good fortune of his son) and others towards the Emperor of Rome, the Kings of Spaine, of *Gaulle*, and of great Britaine. Then from thence to *Quedragant*, and to the Kings *Cildadan*, and of *Eohenia*, to advertise them of the great enterprize of the King *Armatos*: and to intreat them for Gods sake, to send them the

greatest

greatest Companie of great Vessels that they can possible to succour *Tbrace*, which otherwise would be ruined. And by reason that this voyage would be long, it was thought fit, that in the meane time, that *Frاندalo* should retire to the Port of the defended Mountaine, and with the King *Norandell*, who ordinarily staid there, they should stop (if they could possible) all Merchants ships or others: to the end that they might hinder their enemies from victuals, if they should march forward without forcing the places. And that the Emperor should remaine in the City, attending the news of the other Christian Princes, to whom Messengers were sent, who were imbarqued that very day, and with pitifull Letters, aswell of the Emperor, as of the Knight of the Sphere; *Languines Abies* of Ireland, and others, they made such diligence, that their legation had the fruit, as you shall heare hereafter. But first I will tell you of some adventures that happened to *Garinter* and *Perion* sons of *Galaor*: of whom we have not as yet spoken, since they departed from *Constantinople*.

CHAP. XIII.

How Garinter and Perion combated against the King of Sibernea, and his Nephews, whom they vanquished in open field.

YOU have heard in the fifth booke of this present History, how *Garinter* and *Perion* sons of *Galaor*, received the order of Knight-hood by the hands of *Esplandian*, who soone after imbarqued themselves, and passed into the Isle of *Californus*, where they had war a long time against some, who inhabited the borders of their Country, especially with the King of *Sibernea* whom they

K 2

chased

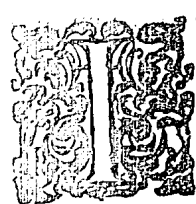
chased unto the principall towne of his Kingdome, where they held him besieged, at that time that *Talanque*, *Manely*, and the Queen *Calafia* arived at *Californus*, returning from their voyage where they had found *Perion de Gaule*, as you have heard. So the Queen would goe no further, nor goe to the Seige: But *Talanque* and *Manely*, without sojourning, came to finde them, using their utmost endeavor to goe thorough with their enterprize. The pleasure which these four Knights had in meeting together was great, *Talanque* and *Manely* being arived in so good time, to see the Combate that was agreed of between *Perion*, *Garinter*, and two of their men, against the King of *Sibernea*, and three of his nephews: under this condition, said *Garinter*, if the victory remaine on his part, that his Country shall remaine as free unto him as it was before the war, and if we are vanquishers, he must leave it unto us peaceably, without quarrelling at any time: Now we know for certaine that he is a good Knight, and his three Nephews are accounted the best of this Countrey: but if you please to be on our side, I hope with Godshelp, that our fortune will be wholly prosperous. In good faith answered the others, we will doe it truly, and we will stay untill the day become. That will be to morrow, said *Talanque*, therefore rest your selfe for to day, that you may be the fresher about your business. And so at that time they would enterprize nothing, but attending for the time to fight, they spent the time in discourting of the skirmishes and assaults which they had given the Towne during the Seige, until the next morning: when a Trumpetter brought the Hostages from the King of *Sibernea*. For which cause, after the oathes and Ceremonies in such cases observed on both sides, those who were appointed to fight, entred into the field, and the King addrested himselfe to *Perion*, whom he met in such manner, that without the helpe of his horse neck, he had been on the ground. But it happened worse to the King: for *Perion* disarmed him, and threw him down to measure

sure his length on the grasse. *Garinter* did as much to one of the Kings nephews, and *Talanque* to him that he charged, although that himselfe was forced to alight; for his horse was so shaken at the Shocke, that he stayed in halfe the way: and as for *Manely*, he leaped from the saddle, and likewise he against whom he ran. Nevertheless none of them shewed themselves dismayed, but arose with great celerity, and laying hands on their swords, there began between them a hard and cruel battel. It is very true, that the King of *Sibernea*, and one of his Nephews, forced *Perion* and *Garinter*, otherwise they would have cut their horses bridles: and their skirmish endured so long, that by the space of foure houres, it could not be discerned, who would have the better or the worse. For the King of *Sibernea* had given such blowes to *Perion*, that making fire come from his eyes, he was forced to set his knee twice to the ground, at which he was so animated, that taking his sword in both his hands, he hit the King between the neck and the shoulders, where he wounded him so sorely, that he never after stirred, but died. *Talanque* on the other side did not sleep, but fought couragiously with his enemy: and he was so much favored of fortune, that finding the joint of the Gantled, he gave such a blow, that he separated his hand from his Arme. Then through paine he gave a great crie, and thinking to have recourse to a swift flight to save his life, he turned his back which gained him but little, for he was thrown down by his enemy, and shamefully put to death. Which *Garinter* seeing, he received so much vertue, that with one blow he cut the naile and armor of him who had so long resisted him: and the sword entring three foot into his body, he gave up the ghost. And the like happened to the fourth, against whom *Manely* had much to doe: for he cut off his head most bravely. Behold how it happened to the King of *Sibernea* and his Nephews, who lying dead on the field, *Garinter* and his Companions retired into their Tents, leaving the cries,

and complaints to those who were thereby endamaged, as well for the losse of their friends, as of their towne, which was rendred, and put into the power of *Perion*, according to the sworne agreements. And the day after by the advice of all, *Garinter* remained crowned King, to which charge, nevertheless he left *Polinas* for Governor, that he might follow strange adventures when he pleased. Wherefore so soone as he had received the homages and oathes of fidelity of his Subjects, leaving good Garrisons where there was need, and *Polinas* for Vice-Roy, he returned with his Companions into the Isle of *Californus*, where the Queen made them welcome. But they sojourned there but a few dayes: For so soone as they had, men and vessels, to goe to the succour of *Constantinople* they went to embarque themselves. So we will leave them in the keeping of our Lord, and we will returne to the Duke of *Ortilensa*, who being exceeding joyfull of so fair a Conquest, as he had had over the King of *Breigne*, tooke his way to *Trebisond*.

CHAP. XIV.

How the Duke of Ortilensa, having vanquished the King of Breigne, he returned to Trebisond: and of the arival of Alquefa at the Court of the Emperor.



IN the former Chapters you have heard, that after the pursuite and slaughter of the Soldiers of the King of *Breigne* (who fled in the Rout) the Duke of *Ortilensa* and his Companie returned to the Camp: and by reason of the night which drew forwards, they could not know the dead untill the next morning, when they went to revisit them, and they found *Grotter*
son

son to the King of *Breigne*, wounded with ten mortall wounds, and so trodden with horses, that the forme of his face could not be seen: a little further on the right hand, was also the King his father stretcht out at his length. Then as they were esteemed for Traytors, so they were separated from the others, and by reason of the honor of their Roiall dignity, they were honorably interred. The bootie then being taken, and the Country reduced to the obedience of the Emperor of *Trebisond*, the Duke of *Ortilensa* tooke his way towards his Master, and he was very well received: and not he onely, but *Florestan*, *Parmenir*, and *Galanes* for whose sake the Emperor held open Court six whole dayes; for which cause the three Knights had convenient opportunity to entertaine the Ladies: who made them understand by effect the extreame pleasure which they took in their so soone returne. One amongst them all shewed her selfe to be sad and pensive. Alas! this was *Onoloren*, who died an hundred times in an houre, by reason of the Captivity of her love! which she nevertheless dissembled to her power: but love pressed her so neer, that teares were as familiar in her eyes, as water in the pipes of a fountaine. And that which more increased her Martyrdome: *Alquefa* (of whom our Historie hath so often mentioned) arived with the Prisoners, which *Perion* sent to *Onolorea*, and presenting her selfe to the Emperor as dinner was ending, humbly recommending to him the unknowne Gentleman, whom he had armed Knight. Ah! said the Emperor, Damsel my friend, I pray you be so courteous to us, as to tell us, where you have left him, and whether he purposeth to make us amends for the injury which he did, in not discovering himselfe to me. Sir, answered she, if he hath done you any injury, it was not by his good will, and therefore he is the more to be excused: but if you please to know further of his estate, suffer me to performe that which he hath commanded me to say to Madam *Gricilerea* your daughter. Yes truly answered the Emperor.

ror. Then *Alquesa* addressing her selfe to the Princeesse, said to her: Madam your Knight (who surpasseth all others in Prowesse and Chivalry) salutes you, as he whom he desires to serve all his life, in testimony whereof he sends you by me, that which he hath conquered since the time he departed from you in much heaviness. Then *Alquesa* presented to her the great Soldan of *Liquie*, and the King of *Jerusalem* two children. This Gentleman said she, is a most renowned Prince amongst the Pagans, and that for good cause: for he when he is in liberty, can command the Country of *Liquie*, as much as the Emperor your father can his. And these others are children to the King of *Palesine*, brother and sister, whom he intreats you to receive, and dispose of as your owne. He hath given me in charge to assure you, that in using them well he shall be much pleased, by reason of the greatness of their births, and the Conquest which he had made of them in his begining. Then she recited to them, how she had conducted him from the first day that she found him in *Ireland*, the deliverance of *Alquis* her father, the aid he gave to *Languines*, and *Abies* of *Ireland*, and particularly all that which hapned untill the very houre, that he and his Companions were imbarqued to goe to *Constantinople*, to succour the Emperor, who expected the Seige of the Pagans: in good faith Damself, answered *Gricilerea*, the honor which he hath done me is so great, that I have good reason to wish him well: but he hath displeased me to enterprize so long a journey; before he came to me, if he be so much mine as he boasteth. Of one thing I will assure you, that I will never pardon him, untill he comes to me in person to aske pardon, and then it may be he may be refused. Madam, said *Alquesa*, you shall see him here in short time, as he hath promised me, for he desires your presence and favor more then any thing in this world. Then addressing her selfe to the Emperesse, and the Princeesse *Onolorea*, she delivered the message of *Perion*. You may easily imagine whether *Floristan* and

his

his Companions were not well pleased, to heare so good news of him whom they sought for, but this was nothing in respect of *Gricilerea*'s joy, who ceased not to entertaine *Alquesa* all that day in such manner, that she had an opportunitie to deliver the Letter to her, which the Knight of the Sphere had sent, the tenor whereof followeth.

I know not, Madam, how I can recompense the great good which you granted me that day, that you accepted me for yours: seeing that the best Knight in the world ought to esteeme himselfe worthie to serve so great a Ladie and Princeesse. And I then poore dumb Creature, without having as then done any knightly act, having attained to such honor, it is a marvell, if my heart hath desired to enterprize a thing, by which (with reason) it hath hopes to remaine in so high a place, separating from it all feare and perill of death by the continual remembrance that it hath of your good favor, which hath in such manner captivated my liberty, that my eyes are chained to your happy presence, from that very day wherein they saw the splendor of your divine face. But this prison is mingled with great Liberty, that it causeth me to live, for the desire which I have alwayes to obey and serve you; being assured that otherwise my soule being afflicted with your absence, could not remaine one houre in this passionate body. Therefore Madam, I humbly beg of you, to command me that which your pleasure is with me, and having pitie on your poore slave, send him your pleasure by this faithful Damself.

From him who kisseth the hands of your
greatness in all humilitie.

I.

Gricilerea

Gricilerea then having read this Letter was so surprized, that she changed colour threes or four times, not for displeasure which she had: but (to the contrary) with the force of love, which encompassed her courage so much, that *Alquesa* perceived her ready to fount; wherefore she embraced her, demanding of her what feebleness had overtaken her. Ahah! My great friend said she, when shall I see him? who endures so much for me, and whom you have chosen amongst the best Knights of the World! Madam, said *Alquesa*, my Father who hath promised you, will find the meanes to send him to you, when it shall be time; in the mean time content your selfe as well as you can, and let him heare from you as often as he can. And then at that time, a Damself came to tell them, that the Empreffe asked for them: wherefore altering their discourse; they returned into the Hall, where all this great company was at that time assembled. And in that very hour the Emperour was advertized by a Venetian *Brigantine*, that the Army of Pagans was on the Coast of *Natolia*, with more then tenne thousand Vessels, going to the straits of *Propontide*: for which cause following his purpose, he commanded to raise men from all parts, for he would in person goe to aid Christendome.

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

How the Emperour of Trebifond embarked to goe against the King Armato, and the sailing of the Pagans to Constantinople.



The Emperours Army being ready to imbarque, and all his Vessels being furnished for Warre, and well fraught, he established for his Lieutenant Generall, *Pardarea*, Duke of *Anetea*, who he commanded before he embarked, to make a generall Muster of his Souldiers. And finding them to be the number of sixty thousand Horsemen, and fifty thousand resolute Souldiers: wherefore the Emperour was so glad, that at that very houre he crowned *Pardarea* King of *Breigne*, who was his Brother-in-Law, to the great content of all the Company. And the next day according to the advice of the Masters and Captaines, every one entred into his Ship; for the wind was faire to set saile, and the Emperour himselfe have left the Duke *Delasonta* with the Empreffe, for Governour of his Country, commended her to the keeping of our Lord, and caused to weigh anchors. Then he who had seene at their departure from the Port this great equipage, surely he would easily thinke the greatnesse of this Lord and Prince; for the Sea was in a manner covered with Vessels, being hung with Flagges, Banners, and Streamers, with so many Trumpets, Fifes, and Drums, that it was a thing almost incredible. So then *Alquesa* would make no longer abode in *Trebifond*, seeing the departure of the Emperour; but so soon as he had left the Port, she went to the Empreffe, of whom she tooke leave, and likewise *Gricilerea*, assuring her, that so soone as she had made one voyage to her Father, she would goe in search of the Knight of the Sphere. For which cause the Princeesse delivered her a Letter to present on her part, praying

ing her with great affection, to perswade him to come to her as soone as he could possibly, which she promised to her: And re-entring into her Vessell, she set saile. So let us leave her on the Sea, and let us return to the Messengers who went to advertize the Christian Princes of the seige of *Constantinople*; who had so faire wind, that they gave Order to what they had enterprized. And the Emperours of *Rome*, King of *Naples*, and the rest were ready to dislodge, at the time that they had knowledge, that the Army of *Armato* might goe into *Thrace*. For this cause entering into their Vessels, according to the Region and Climate from when they dispatched, traversing so many Seas, that at last (not without great travell) they met in the Defended Mountaine, where they waited for the Earle of *Frاندalo* and *Morandell*, with their equipage. At this very time, the King *Armato* accompanied with *Almirin*, brother to the Souldan of *Liquie*, the King of *Jerusalem*, and Souldans of *Persia*, of *Alapa*, of *Babilon*, the Califs of *Egypt*, *Taborlanes*, and many other great Lords of the East, parted from *Tenedos* with so great a number of Ships, *Brigamines*, *Galeaces*, *Gallies*, and *Foists*, that the Sea seemed to be covered. But they found not the Emperour so unaccompanied, but he had thirty thousand Horsemen, and fifty thousand bearing Armes. Neverthelesse he seeing so great a number of his Enemies to approach so near to the great City, and not having had any news of them from whom he expected aid, he was somewhat grieved, which he hid: and the better to assure his men, he was of advice that they should (as much as they could possibly) hinder the King *Armatoes* Army from Landing, giving them continuall Alarumes to vex and trouble them. For which purpose were appointed the Knight of the Sphere, *Languines*, *Abies* of *Ireland*, *Argamont*, and his Sonne, with ten thousand Horsemen, and two thousand chosen Souldiers. Who having had notice of the place where the King *Armato* would take Land, they issued out in good equipage, and the same day they discovered the Vanguard of the Pagans, with the

the King of *Jerusalem*, accompanied with three Giants Brothers to him whom the Knight of the Sphere had killed at the Fountaine, where he had delivered *Alquis* the Damsells Father. So the Christians remained close and in ambush, to see the countenance of the others; but they made there no long stay, before they saw the Pagans Vessels by little and little to approach the Land, and lastly to throw Planks, and descend into Cock-boats, Skiffes, and other little Boats, wherby they might Land their men. I doe believe that those who were the most diligent, were not the best used; for *Perion* and his company ranne upon them, and defeated a great many, before they could be succoured, and untill their battail and Rear-guard could joyne together, and with full saile gained the shore, in such manner that *Perion* and his company were forced to retreat, and close themselves, untill the three Giants with a great band of *Palestines*, rushed on them with so much boldness, that he who had seen them, would have judged no otherwise, but that they had a desire to performe their utmost. Nevertheless they found much to doe when they came to Land, by reason that *Perion* and *Argamont* with their Squadron held together; and at that time there was so great a Conflict, that many on both sides lost their lives there. And by reason that the Pagans gained Land, and forced them to retreat, *Argamont* went to the Knight of the Sphere, shewing him the eminent peril and danger they should fall into, if it were not provided for. Wherefore, he (as a wise and advised Captaine) began from hence-forwards to retire, nevertheless they sustained the heat of the skirmish: which the Califfe of *Egypt* understanding, re-advanced, and entering further in the preiss then he should, he was met by *Perion*, who gave him such a blow on the head, that he separated his head in twaine. For which, one of the King of *Jerusalem*s Giants that followed him, was so angred, that he lifted up his sword with both his hands, thinking to give *Perion* the like payment; But *Argamont* saw the blow comming, set his shield before him,

which entered into it above a foot and a halfe. Surely this force was esteemed marvellous among others: for *Argamonts* shield was of fine Steele, and neverthelesse it was cut as it were in half; and as the Giant assayed to pull out his sword, *Argamont* gave him so great a blow with an Iron Crow which he had, that he bowed his head to his saddle, and in rising, *Perion* separated his shoulders from his sides, of which he dyed. When *Golfon* his brother saw him in such extremity, never was wild Boar so mad with Dogs, and he soone made *Argamont* understand it, for he sought for him out amongst them all: and at his arrivall, he gave him so many blows with his Mace, that without the helpe of his Sonne *Ardadile Canile*, he had lost his life: but he tooke *Golfon* at an advantage, and he thrust his sword through his body. What will you that I say? God did well declare this day, that he would aid the Christians: and it was so to be wondered at, how any one of them could escape, they being encompassed with the whole power of the Pagans. Neverthelesse they found meanes to save themselves, and retreat with their honours unto the very walls of the City. There *Abies* of Ireland, *Languines* triumphed; for although they were wounded, yet they did as great Deeds of Armes, as any Knights could doe, and great part of the honour of so faire a retreat, might (without injuring the others) be attributed to them. The Pagans having then pursued the Knight of the Sphere, and his company even to the trenches of the Town; they had so many darts thrown at them by those that were within, that they were forced to retreat, without daring to passe any further; and by this meanes, the Christians might enter with ease, not without great losse: for there was killed twelve or fifteen thousand on their side, and more then twenty thousand of the others. Then the Gates were presently rammed up, and a strick watch was set in all parts: and that same day the enemies encamped on the Sea shore, leave the Kings of *Rabie* and *Galosse*, for Captaines of their Army on the Sea; with necessary equipage. And the night following they began to draw

draw near to the Towne, and fortifie their Camp; in the middest whereof *Meliz* commanded to erect her Tents and Pavillions, and next to her were those of the King of *Giants* Island, and *Gradaflea* his Daughter, who had been to fetch *Lisuart* out of *Trebisond* as you have heard. During these transactions, the Emperour of *Constantinople*, and the besieged did continually labour, expecting every hour the battery of the place, and the assault thereof: but that was not so soone as they thought: for *Meliz* (without whose counsell nothing was enterprized) willed that those who had wearied themselves on the Sea, should first refresh themselves; and in the meane time shee commanded a great number of double Ladders to be made, to mount the Walls withall, when she should find opportunity. And although this was one of the occasions, why the assault of the Town was so long delayed, yet there was one greater. The villanous woman would have *Lisuart* burnt before all: for she knew by her devilish act, that so long as he lived, the Emperour of *Constantinople* would be invincible: which shee declared to the chiefe of the Army: but she purposed, God prevented it otherwise, as you shall heare.

CHAP. XVI.

How by the meanes of the Infanta Gradafilea, Lifvart had his life saved, and reentred into Constantinople.



He Infanta Gradafilea was present at the Counsell, that was held by *Meliz* and the Captaines of the Army, to advise offorcing the place, where the Sorcerers resolved on the death of *Lisvart*, who according to her advice should be burnt to ashes, in the most eminent place, that he might be seene of the besieged, to which the Pagan Princes soon accorded. But if *Gradafilea* had been of the Counsell, and might her verdict have sway'd, the love which she bare to *Lisvart* had hindred the judgment; for she could willingly have laid downe her owne life to save his. And therefore she purposed in her selfe, seeing she had been the greatest meanes of his bringing from *Trebisond*; that she would likewise save him, and put him in the custody of his greatest friends in *Constantinople*. To performe which, she resolved to cheat her owne Father, who was newly made keeper of *Lisvart*: therefore the day before *Lisvart* should suffer, she went to her Father, and told him that she had a matter to tell him of, which did not onely concerne his life, but also his honor. The old man giving too great credit to his daughters speeches, left all untill the evening, and gave command to the watch not to hinder his daughter in going in and out. She then knowing the Commands of her father, and the libertie she had to goe to him at any houre of the night, she deferred it untill the changing of the watch, and then she would take one of her women with her, to the end that *Lisvart* might put on her womans apparel, and so pass the watch unexamined; and thus she concluded, and executed

ecuted it, so that at the time appointed, she and her woman did set forwards with all things requisite. And passing through the watch, she came to her fathers chamber where she communed with him so long, that in the end he fell asleep, and so did all the rest. *Gradafilea* hearing them snore, she retired into a wardrobe, where *Lisvart* lay; whom she found very pensive and solitary: wherefore coming neer him, she said: fair Sir, I pray you be content and arise. He seeing a woman at such an houre, could not at the present tell what to think: nevertheless, at the last he answered her: Truly Madam, you pray me to doe that, which to me is impossible, seeing that you alone and no other (as I thinke) have been the cause of all the evil that I have endured, and am like to suffer. My imprisonment doth not so much grieve me, as to see my friends so streightned, and I not having the power to help them. In good faith, said she, you shall pardon me. It is most certaine that I brought you from *Trebisond*; but did not know of the ill you were to suffer, and have since suffered: and to make it appeare for truth, if you will grant me one boone at any time that I shall aske it of you, I will use my utmost indeavour to release you. Madam, said *Lisvart*, I will denie you nothing if I may have my liberty. Then said she, arise, and put on the clothes which this woman shall give you, and follow me, but be sure that you doe not forget your owne clothes to put them on when you shall have occasion. *Lisvart* performed her will, and in the meane time *Gradafilea* watched least any body should come: Great part of the night was spent before *Lisvart* and his guide were ready, but a little before day, they left the Pavilion secretly: and passing through the watch, one who was more watchful then the rest demanded who was there. I said, *Gradafilea*, The watch who knew her gave her the good morrow, and so they passed on, until they came to the Trenches, where she was againe stopped; but she was not much hindred, for the watch revered her, and asked her if she would

have any company. No said she, I will have none but these two Damfels. I will goe and seek for the weakest place of the walls, where a breach may be made to morrow. Goe then Madam, said the watch, and make no noise, that you may not be heard of those of the City. Thus she performed her enterprize, and brought her Lover neer the City, which he soone knew. Then he being extreme joyfull, began to give God thanks, when *Gradasilea* said to him: Now it is time to save your selfe, take your clothes and get out of danger. Ah ah Madam! answered he, I have great cause to confesse, that next to God I hold my life at your hands! and therefore in what place soever I shall be, you may be sure to finde me a readie servant to obey and serve you. Saying so, he threw off his long garments and put on his owne. *Gradasilea* could not forbear kissing and embreiang of him with tears in her eyes: and fearing to be discovered, without darcing to stay there, she committed him to the protection of his Gods. And returning back, *Lisuart* passed on, until he came to the Citie Gates, where the Centinel discovered him, and cried out aloud to him: Who goes there at this houre, returne or I will make you. Friend, said *Lisuart*, I pray open the gate, for I am such a person that the Emperor will be glad of my returne: The watchman knew well that he was his Country-man, and therefore he spake more mildely to him then he did the first time: Saying to him, it is impossible to let you in untill it be day: for the Knight of the Sphere, who is Captaine of this Company hath the Key. And I am sure he will not deliver it to any man unless he comes himselfe: and it is too soone to awake him. I pray thee friend, said *Lisuart*, tell me who this Knight of the Sphere is. The Centinell being wearied with so long discourse, snapt him up and bid him goe walke abroad. Upon these speeches a Captain of the band came, and demanded of the Centinel what was the matter: Captaine said he, there is a man who would come in, but if please you, I will set him away. At these words

words the Captain went forwards, and said to *Lisuart*, friend, have patience untill day, for you cannot enter any sooner. Captaine, answered *Lisuart*, if the Emperor knew of my arival, he would be more joyfull then you thinke for. I pray you (out of curtesie) goe tell him that I have brought him news that will much content him. When the Captaine had taken some notice of *Lisuart*'s speech, he began to remember him; for he in his younger years had been brought up neer the Emperor: wherefore he could not forbear, but he said aloud to him. Either your speech deceives me, or I know you to be our Prince *Lisuart*. Friend, said *Lisuart*, speak low, and doe not name me againe, for I am the same, and goe to the Emperor presently, and cause the gate to be opened. Ah, ah, ah Sir! said the watch, stay a little, I will but onely goe and come. And saying so, he ran to the Knight of the Sphere, whom he found asleep, but he awakened him, and said to him: Sir, your Nephew is just now come to the foot of the wall, and desires the Gate to be opened. How? answered the Knight of the Sphere, my Nephew? I think you dreame. Sir, said the Captaine, I know him by his speech, it is he without doubt. When *Perion* heard him speak so confidently, he tooke the keyes and went strait to the wall, and there he had some talke with *Lisuart*. Then after he knew it was he, he went himselfe, and let him in. Then they embraced one another, with great friendship, for *Perion* discovered himselfe to be his Uncle. Sir, my Nephew said *Perion*, I thinke it best to retire into my lodging untill the Emperor riseth, who will be very joyful of your returne. Let us goe then said *Lisuart*. And so they retired: then they being together alone, *Lisuart* told *Perion* how he went from *Constantinople*, thinking to be made Knight at his hands, but said he, *Milun* sent for me by a Damfel, who hath since saved my life, when I was prisoner. Then he recited to him all the usage he had received, and lastly, how he had escaped. By my God answered *Perion*, see this wicked woman, she thought assur-

redly to make you die. Shee shall miss of her purpose said *Lisuart* (if I can help it) but is there any here that is called the Knight of the Sphere, for this night when I came, it was told me the Knight of the Sphere had the keyes, I pray tell me who this is that hath so much trust reposed in him. Thereupon *Perion* laughed, and told him why he had this name, and the adventures he had with the Damsel *Alquesa*. In the meane time *Armato* and *Melia* slept at their ease, but in the morning, finding *Lisuart* absent, they were readie to die with vexation and madnes.

CHAP. XVII.

How Melia knew the loss of Lisuart, and of the displeasure that she and Armato had, because he was saved in Constantinople, and of that which happened.

When *Radafilea* having (as you have heard) set *Lisuart* at Liberty, she soone returned into his fathers tent, who she found awake. Then she told him what she had done, nevertheless she hid from him the principal occasion, why she had done it: and told him, that for her life she would not have had him to have suffered, seeing that she brought him from *Trebisond*, under a faire shadow. The King was so angred and vexed, that he was readie to come out of his bed to have killed her, and that not without cause; for by this meanes the enterprize of so many Lords upon *Constantinople* was broken, and he had likewise engaged himselfe to deliver him up, whensoever he should be demanded at his hands. *Gradafilea* seeing him so angred, had no other means but onely to fall at his feet on her knees, and ask him pardon; for said she, he not deserving death I am readie to die for it if you shall think fit. Ah ah! said the King,

King, you have undone me, for so soone as *Armato* shall know of it, he hath good reason to take away my meanes and my life also! Sir said she, *Armato* shall know that you are in no fault, but that it was I alone, as I will confess to him, and let him do to me what he thinke good. And she knew so well how to appease her fathers anger, that he held his peace, and arose and went to *Armatoes* tent, and awaked him to tell him of the folly of his daughter. And as he gave him the good morrow, *Armato* asked him what good news he brought him so soon. Ah sir, said he, rather what misfortunes? How said *Armato*? So the King told him of the loss of *Lisuart*, and the whole enterprize of *Gradafilea*. Oh yee Gods! cried *Armato*, have I so highly offended you, that I deserve so great a punishment? then in great choller he commanded the King to flie from his presence; for said he, there shall none of you depart this Country without suffering death, and perpetuall captivity. *Armato* cried so loud, that *Melia* who was lodged in the next Pavillion heard the noise: wherefore she arose in her smock, and went to the King who was much displeased: but she was more when she understood the cause, she having knowne of *Lisuart's* flight, began to tear her haire, and her smock and her very flesh. This noise being heard of some, and they thinking their enemies had surprized them, they cried the Alarm, that on a suddain all the field was in armes. So the Souldans of *Persia* and *Alips* came to *Armato*, to know what was the matter: and when they knew the cause, as wise men by fair speeches they found the meanes to appease *Armato* and *Melia*: telling them that they might be the cause of frightening the whole Army. For said these Lords, seeing that it is the pleasure of our Gods, what will you doe? will you contend with Jupiter? doe you think he will doe any thing but for our good? and it may be we have offended him. Therefore let us goe to him, and appease him with our prayers, and not anger him more. You may say what you please, said *Armato*: but the Rogue that had the keeping of him shall die,

and also she that conducted him. Sir, said the Souldan of *Persia*, you have to deal with men, he is come without intreatie, or sending for from a far Country, and hath carried himselfe, as every one knowes, it may be when he hath been heard to speak, he will be found more innocent then you thinke for, therefore let him be heard, then if he hath offended, he may be punished by the advice of the Princes of this Camp, and it may be of his own men. These Lords of *Persia* and *Alapa* did so much that they somewhat appeased the King *Armato* and *Melis*, And in the meantime the Camp continued in forme of Battel, whereupon it happened, that they who went the Rounds on the City walls heard the noise of the Trumpets in the aire. It was as then but at the point of day, wherefore doubting they should be surprized, and that the enemies would storme the place, they suddenly advertised the Emperor, the Knight of the Sphere, and the principal Captains, who ran hastily to their charge, and remained there untill Sun-rising, when they saw the Pagans retire. The Emperor did not then know any thing of the returne of his Son: but soon after *Perion* brought him to him, and with a grace said to him in presenting him: Sir, the last night I took this Spie, what is your pleasure shall be done with him? You may well imagine if the good Prince were well pleased: for the tears fell from his eyes in imbracing him. During these passages, *Languines* and *Abies* of *Ireland* came, who imbraced him, and asked him what good Angel had brought him thither. Then the Emperor asked of him how he came thither, and from whence he came. Then *Lisuart* recited to him his whole passed fortunes since *Gradaflea* carried him from *Trebisond*, untill that present, and said he, the Alarum which you have heard hath been onely for my loss. Oh God! said the Emperor, let us goe to the Empress, for I am certain she will be very glad of this good news. Then he took *Lisuart* by the hand, and went to the Empress, whom they met going to Masse: but she stayed when she saw the Em-

peror

ror, who presented *Lisuart* unto her, saying. Madam, doe you know this Gentleman? This is your son said she, who may account this adventure the strangest and dangerouslest that can happen in all his life. Praised be God! said the Empresse. And kissing him a thousand times, she would not suffer him to goe out of her sight untill it was dinner time, and then he related to them all that which had happened in the Army of the Pagans, and part of their Counsels. And so falling from one discourse to another, the Tables being withdrawn, he spake to *Perion*, saying: Sir, my Unckle and I departed from this Country (as it is well knowne) to goe in search of you who was reported to be lost. And my chiefe purpose was to be made Knight at your hands, not knowing of whom better to have the same, you being brother to my Father, and Son to my Grandfather *Amadis*. Therefore let me intreat you to let me obtaine this honour at your hands to morrow, and that without the City Gates, that thereby the enemies may see it, and of which they will be very sad. Sir, said *Perion*, there where the Emperor is present, I may lawfully be excused of your request: The Emperor will pardon me if he pleaseth, and I will humbly intreat him to intreat you on my behalfe. I pray let it be so, said the Emperor. Seeing that it pleaseth you both said *Perion*, I will to morrow doe what lies in me to performe, therefore I pray said he, prepare your selfe, and watch this night, as is the custome: *Lisuart* kindly thanked him, then night being come, he entred into the Chappel, and accompanied with many high persons, he remained at his Orisons untill the Sun arose.

How Lifvart received the Order of Knighthood, and of the great meruails and adventures that happened the same day.



LISVART having watched, as it is the custome, the Emperor came to him in the Chappel, being accompanied with the Knight of the Sphere, two Giants, and many other great persons. And the time being come for the accomplishing of this enterprize, which was to be done without the Citie gates: he commanded the Souldiers to stand to their Armes, and be ready on the wall, least the Enemy should (during the solemnity) assaile them. And the Emperor kept onely twentie thousand men for his own Guard: then he caused the Gate to be opened, and close to it was erected a high Theatre, upon which he ascended, with Lifvart, the Knight of the Sphere, and Argamont: and the Ladies stand upon the wall, where they could see all that was done. The Pagans seeing so great a company of people, they gathered together more to look on them, then to assaile them. Then Lifvart kneeled on his knees before Perion, who gave him the Order: but when he came to gird on his Sword, they found that it had been forgotten: nevertheless that did not hinder them a jot: for the Emperor be-thought himself, that with a better he could not begin to doe deeds of Armes, then with that of the declared King Lifvart, which he caused after his death (in remembrance of him) in the hand of an old Statue of Apolidon which was on the Gates; And therefore he prayed Argamont (who was taller then any of the rest) to take it down, but as he lifted up his arme, there fell from the Skie so great a flash of Lightning, mingled with such a thunder, that the Statue was torne in pecces, and there issued from

thence

thence a Lion, the fiercest that could be seen, carrying in his body a Sword, which had the pummel of a Carboncle flaming like fire. And that which most frightened the beholders, the beast began to roare, and make such pitifull cries, that every one was astonilhed: and at the same instant there fell from the Clouds at the feet of the Emperor, a little Emerauld Coffer, wherein was a Letter containing these words.

THe great wise and good Knight Apolidon, hath forged with his own hands the sword which this Beast presenteth to the good Knight, (who at the time that it shall appear) shall be armed by the hands of the son of the brave Lion: and therefore let no others enterprize to take the Sword from him, otherwise will may happen to him; then it was apparently known by reading of this writing, that this Sword was allotted to Lifvart, and to none other. Wherefore the Emperor said to him, Performe this adventure which is appointed for you. And thereupon the new Knight approached neer the Lion, and calling on his Lady Onolorea for help he set on the Lion to take the Sword, and then there happened an other flash of lightning, and so great thunder, that they thought the Skie would have clogen in twaine, and then the Sword that Melia had placed over the Citie was seen fall down, and sinke into the earth, and there issued from the place the most hideous spirit that could be seen, that the most assured of the Company was in great doubt: For this fantasse ran directly to Lifvart, who was then so neer the Lion that he snatched the rich Sword from him, and in snatching it away, the Heaven, the earth, and the Sea were so troubled, that there was not any living creature in ten

N

miles

miles space that was not astonish'd for a quarter of an houre. A thing almost incredible, for this noise was heard throughout all the Countries of Asia, Europe, and Africa: and the air was so obscure, that neither Lisvart, the spirit, nor the Lion was seen, untill the Sun disperst the darkness with its incomparable brightness. Then the Beast ran into the sea, and the new Knight remained stretched out all along, holding in his hand the rich Sword: and neer him (instead of the fantasie) was the body of Melia, as black as coale. Then Perion approached, who thought verily that Lisvart was dead: But he found it otherwise, for he was but in a swoond, wherefore the Emperor commanded him to be carried to the Palace, and that the sword should be taken from him, untill he was well, which was impossible to be done. And as they were in these passages, a Knight brought the Scabberd and belt, whereon was certaine Characters, which at that time could not be understood. And the Knight said, that he found them amongst the ruines of the statue of Apolidon. Lisvart being then layd in his bed, the Emperor consulted what should be done with the body of Melia, and after diuers opinions heard, it was at last concluded that she should be burnt in the publick place, and her ashes thrown into the aire, which being come to the knowledge of Armato, he was meruellously vexed.

CHAP. XIX.

How the Pagans purposed to assault the towne, and of the great meanes they used to storme it.



He Pagans being abashed, and that not without cause, having seen so many strange adventures in so short a time, could not tell what to think, especially when they heard of the death of the Enchantress Melia. The news of whose shamefull death being come to the knowledge of Armato (by the meanes of a Grecian Spie) did so much stir him up to wrath, that he swore he would never depart from the City untill he had rased it, and put all within it to the edge of the sword. At last the Captains of the Army to appease him, promised to assaile it on the morrow morning, and to take it, or else to leave their lives there in the place, and to that end they made their intent knowne to the Officers of the Army, that every one might be ready with ladders and other necessities to fill up the trenches, and likewise their pioneers to undermine the walls, that they might enter in on foot. The King of Jerusalem in the Company of three Taborlaves, and a hundred thousand men had the charge of the first onset; having for his aid the Souldans of Persia and Alape, if he should be repulst. And for the third onset was the King Armato in person, with so great a number of Tures, that the earth was in a manner covered therewith. And for the Sea, word was likewise sent to the Kings of Bugie and Gilosse, that so soone as they should hear the sound of their Trumpets, then they should assault the Port, and use their utmost endeavor to force the town on that part. The Emperor of Constantinople knowing of this purpose, soone made it knowne to his Captaines, to the end that they might be in a readines to doe their en-

deavors. *Lisuart* was not come to him selfe untill then, but then he began to speak; and news was carried to the Emperor, who came to him to know how he did. Very well sir, answered he, although for a time the noise of the great thunder hath made me loose my understanding. I do not know said the Emperor, but I think, you alwayes thinke you are a fighting, for you would by no meanes let goe the sword which you have conquered. By my faith said *Lisuart*, I neither thought of peace or war, nor scarce of my selfe. Truly said the Emperor, there is no man living ever heard of the conquest of a sword so strangely as this which you have, and behold! here is the Scabbord and belt. One thing displeaseth me much, which is to think that you are not able to approve your selfe against your enemies, who intend to come visit us to morrow morning. How said *Lisuart*, doe you think me to be so weak? No (with Gods help) I shall make them know, that I am as well as ever I was, and thereupon he presently arose. Then the Emperor said to him. My Son, the Knight of the Sphere, you and *Argamont* with their Troop, shall have the guard of the Dragons gate, which is the weakest place of all, the King of *Hungarie* and the Earl *Salader*, that of the Eagle, accompanied with the Prince of *Brandalie*, *Abies* of *Ireland*, *Languinet*, and *Arduile Caine*, for that place is almost as weak as the other. And yee shall have both ten thousand men a peece, to sallie out upon them, if you shall finde it requisite. And I with a good number will remaine in the highest place of the City, to succour those that shall have most need, and I will likewise place the women, and those of least defence to carrie oile, boiling water, stones, pitch, Sulphur, brimstone, and all manner of timber to hinder the enemies entrance. Sir, said *Argamont*, it is requisite that some may stand neer the walls, readie to make up the breaches in the walls, that they shall make, as they intend, but I will by Gods help doe so much, that they shall not escape so well as they think for: for I will tell you how I will doe; so soon as I know at what place they

they intend to enter, I will make a trench just against the place, which shall be filled with faggots, Sulphur, Saltpeter, and pitch, and so I will give fire to it so soon as they shall enter upon it. Thus they all consulted on what they would doe on the morrow, and at that night they placed a strict watch. So about the break of day, they who were to storme the place, having double ladders, departed every one with his bundle out of their trenches, and they made such a cry, that they were heard three miles about, and so they ran straight to the wall, and placed their Ladders in so many places, that they almost surprized those within; for they had soone made a breach sufficient to enter in at, but before they got it, the trenches was almost filled with dead Pagans, nevertheless they being covered with their shields, and their swords in their hands, they ran to the Combate. Thus they gave the assault in two sundrie places, and the first and the strongest was where *Lisuart* was, and where *Argamont* had done what he intended & thereby there was cut off about six thousand, at which the rest being frightened, fall back as fast as they had formerly approached. Which *Lisuart* seeing, he issued out at a false gate, with a certaine number of the most valiant, and fell upon the rear of them; so that the stoutest of them lost heart, giving such fear to the whole Army, that they who assailed the part where the Prince *Brandalie* was fled, and were routed. But *Armas* came with his Squadron, who made them turne their faces, though against their wills; and in the meane time, they who had issued out of the Town re-entered, and that without the losse of ten men. *Armas* then being much animated with courage, purposed to revenge him selfe, and with ten hundred thousand Turks which accompanied him, gave so strong an assault to the breach where *Perion* was, that he had well nigh carryed it; but the Emperour came with so good aid, that the Combate lasted without breathing, for the space of three hours. There *Lisuart* shewed him selfe in his colours, for he stroke not any Turke or Pagan, but he killed him. There triumphed the Knight of

the Sphere, *Argamont*, and *Ardadile Canile*, to whom approached the King of *Jerusalem*: and as he purposed to cleave his head in twain, *Argamont* put himselfe forwards, and gave him such a blow that he stunned him: Nevertheless he was succoured by one of his Giants, who purposing to kill *Lisuart*, took his sword in both his hands to strike him, but *Lisuart* held up his shield, and had his hand so nummed, that he thought he had lost it. Wherefore he soon revenged himselfe: for he struck him who had so hurt him, and with one back blow he cut off halfe his neck, and cast him dead at his feet. At which the King of *Jerusalem* was so grieved, that he ventured into the presse, and seeing *Perion* (being the man that he hated most in all the World) he set upon him on his back, and he received three great blowes before he could turne his face. And in setting on him, he cryed, Rascall, through your meanes my Children are imprisoned; but I will soon be revenged of you, for you shall die without remedy, and that presently. So *Perion* knew then, who it was that he dealt with, wherefore he ranne upon him, and at his arivall, struck him on the back so strongly, that his eyes dazeled, and he staggered ready to fall. Thus the Pagans and Christians handled one another, a great number whereof lay dead, as well without the walls as within; for the assault hourly encreased, but it was well assayed, and well defended, in such manner that the King was thrice repulsed, and he recharged them three times anew. Yet he knew that it was a folly for him to strive with his fortune at that place, therefore he commanded them to retreat; and he commanded the Archers to shoot continually. In the mean time the Souldans of *Persia* and *Alape*, with their new mustred men, marched up, and endeavoured with all their might to storme the place, where they behaved themselves so valaintly, that in the end they conquered the wall, and constrained *Abies* of *Ireland* and the rest to retreat. Which the Emperour knowing of, he ranne thither in person, and with twenty thousand men he forced the Enemies to fall back into the Trenches. Never helesse

the

the number of the Pagans was so great, that they continued in Combate hand to hand, for the space of three hours; and there was so many slaine, and so much blood spilt, that it seemed to be a fountaine. In the mean time, the Kings of *Gilosse* and *Bugie*, forced into the Port in such manner, that three thousand *Arabians* took Land, and the fight lasted a long time: Newes whereof came soon to the Emperour; but he had so much to doe else where, that he could not lessen his Forces on the Land, to aide them at the Sea, where they cryed, the town is won, the town is won: Nevertheless this joy lasted but a little, for they were soon driven back by the Archers, who did shoot continually out of Houses that were near the walls: In the mean time *Ardadile Canile*, came with three thousand fresh Horsemen; yet all this help had been in vain: For God looked on the Town in mercy, and the night came on, which was so black and rainy, that neither the Pagans nor Christians, could discern one another. For which cause the assailers were constrained to retire, and found a retreat, being sorry that they had missed of their purpose, which they hoped nevertheless to execute on the morrow; but they within provided in such sort, that instead of resting themselves, they rested not all night from repairing their breaches, and the Emperour himselfe went about to encourage them, in such manner, that by the morning all the breaches were well repaired, and were in condition to resist the enemy. Then the Emperour called a Counsell of Officers, and there they resolved, that *Lisuart* the Knight of the Sphere, *Argamont*, and *Ardadile Canile*, with six thousand fresh men should defend the breach that was made the day before: and that the King of *Hungarie*, *Abies* of *Ireland*, *Languines* and ten thousand foot-men should keep the Gate. And the Emperour would stay as he had done before, with ten thousand men, whom he would divide as necessitie should require, and thus they ordered their business. So let us leave them there, untill the next morning, when we shall see how things were carried.

CHAP. XX.

CHAP. XX.

Of the aid that came to the Enemies, and of the great Fleet of Christians which came to raise the Seige at Constantinople.



He Pagans being retired, as you have heard, were very sad for their great loss, for they had either killed or wounded the number of fiftie thousand men. But two things comforted them, the one was the certaine hope to take the towne, and to sack and pillage it, and put all within it to the Sword, and so revenge themselves for the death of their friends: the other was, that *Pintiquizestra* Queen of the Amazons, came to their aid, accompanied with six thousand women, as good warriors as could be possible. And *Grifilan* King of the *Savage* Island, with five thousand Savages, bearing bowes and arrowes which they could use singularly well. These two, the King and Queen, neighbours to one another, hearing of the great preparations made by the Levant Princes, to invade the Empire of *Constantinople* came especially, to trie themselves against some Christian Knights, who were bruited to be so valiant. The King *Armato* and those of his host kindly welcomed them, and they continually discoursed to them the assaults that they had made that day. And they so much bragged, that they told them the Towne had been taken had it not been for the night, wherefore then the King *Grifilan* and the Queen were much grieved they had not made more haste. But they therefore desired of *Armato* that they might give the first assault to the Towne on the morrow, which he soon granted to them: On the other side, they in the Towne laboured to fortifie themselves, resolving to keep the Towne with their lives, from those, at whose hands they expected no mercy. So soon as day came, the King and Queen went

fraight

fraight to the breach, where the Pagans had the day before entred the Town, and making a hideous cry (according to their custome) they ran upon the Rampart. But the Archers that were in the breach so well entertained them, that many Savages, and women lost their lives there in cruell manner, nevertheless, that did not stop them; for they ran on straight to the place, where *Lisuart*, the Knight of the Sphere, *Argamont*, and the rest attended them. the Queen *Pintiquizestra* being willing to shew her renowned Prowesse, ran on the first, and combated with the Knight of the Sphere: but she had like to have been thrown down, had it not been for the aid of her women who came on so fast, that the Christians were forced to fall back, and the Amazons cried out, the Town is won. But *Argamont*, *Lisuart*, and the Knight of the Sphere, and the rest of the forces comming forwards made them leave that they had conquered. In the meane time *Armato* and the *Califfe* who assailed the other part of the Towne, were not sparing of their persons, but used their utmost indeavor to storme it, but they found the Princes *Saluder*, and *Brandalie* more active then they expected, in such manner, that more then ten thousand Pagans lay dead in the place. Nevertheless, for the space of three quarters of an houre, it could not well be judged who should have the best, for two *Taborlans* brought thither fresh men, and the Souldan of *Alape* came thither in person with fortie thousand men, who came so resolutely, that they had well nigh conquered the place. Which the Emperor knowing sent aid thither presently, and this which did most hurt them was the great store of pitch faggots, Sulphure, boiling water, and Salt peeter, that the wall was all on fire, wherefore they were forced to retire, and let the flame take its course. Behold how the poore City was distressed by Land, and much more by Sea, when the watch of the King of *Bugie* discovered in the way of the Defended Mountaine a puissant Armie at Sea, sayling directly towards them: of which they

O

came

came presently to informe those who assailed the Port. Wherefore the King of *Giloffe* sent forth a Brigantine to goe see who this might be. And doubting it to be some aid to their enemies, they retired from the Combate, and keeping their vessels in forme of battel, they marched towards the Pontique Sea, to the end that they might defend the entrance of the *Gulph* if they should think fit. The Brigantine did what lay in its power, to carry certaine tidings, and tarried a long time without appearing at all: and it had so good fortune that a little ship of Christians, which thought to land to get fresh water, fell into her hands. Wherefore turning faile, she carried this Vessell into the place from whence she came: and by the Master of the ship they knew that the Army of the Christians were neere, and purposed to come raise the Seige at *Constantinople*, and give their enemies battell, before they should compasse the meanes to retreat. This news did not a jot dishearten or astonish the King of *Bugie*, but he asked if there were many. Sir answered the Master, yes more then you think for. And of what Countrie? said the King. Some of *Gaule*, said he, others of *Rome*, of *Sobradise*, of *Spaine*, of great *Britaine*, of *Ireland*, of *Scotland*, of *Norway*, *Sansuegne*, *Bohemia*, *Mongaze*, *Suce*, and *Thesefame*. Truly said the King, a faire company. Sir said the Master, a few dayes since the Emperor of *Trebisped*, and the Kings of *Calisarnus*, and *Sibernie*, have joyned with us, and I can assure you, that he who hath not seen this company of Ships, cannot boast of seeing the fairest sight in the world. When the Kings of *Bugie* and *Giloffe* had heard this discourse, and that it was requisite diligently to provide for it, they gave notice thereof unto the King *Armano*, and the other Souldans of their Host, advising that seeing the enemy was so strong and so neer them, they should leave the straights of *Pontus*, and keep the Goulfe of *Propontide*, as well to have provisions more easily from *Natolia*, as to defend themselves more commodiously. Thus the news of the

arivall

arivall of the Christians did quickly spread abroad amongst those who did assaile *Constantinople*. For which cause being surprized with a marvellous feare, the most assured began to lose heart, and by little and little to retire out of the Presse. Which the Princes of the Army perceiving, they caused a Retreat to be sounded, and so retired unto their Fort. Those of the Towne being much abashed at these passages, could not at the first tell what to think, untill that a Citizen who watched at one of the highest steeples, came to informe the Emperor, that towards the way of the Defended Mountaine the Sea was covered with Vessels, comming with full sailes directly towards the City, and that without doubt the Kings of *Bugie* and *Giloffe* with their ships and furniture, were entred into the Gulf, going to *Natolia*. I leave to your Judgments whether or no this newes were well received. And the Emperor doubting of the truth thereof, went in company of some of his to the Port, where he saw the so long hoped for aid: before all which marched one ship being of the largest size, where in was scene no other Mariners nor Souldiers then Apes as green as Emeraulds, every one holding his bended bowe, and arrows at his girdle, and the neerer the ship came the more did those of *Constantinople* admire, and that not without cause, for it was likewise built after the true Pourtraict of the firme Island. It staid not but landed, and without any disturbance did cast Anchor, and threw planks on the shoare. Then *Alquesa* came forth, accompanied with the other Damsels, all clothed in crimson Taffete, each of them carrying a Harp, wherewith they made a harmonious noise. And there followed neere unto them, the most Puissant *Amadis* King of Great Britaine leading *Oriana* by the hand, clad with a vestment of figured cloth of Gold, and behinde, and next to them *Urganda* the unknown; The Emperor *Esplandian* and the Empresse *Leonorina*: Then *Cormella*, and next to them, *Don Galaor*, *Briolanea*, and King *Florestan*, and his wife, King *Agries* and *Olinda*, the

King of Bohemia, *Grifandor*, and *Mabila*, then *Gandalin* and his wife, and behinde all the rest came Mr. *Elizabeth*, and *Ardan* the Dwarfe, carrying the Helmet of *Amadis*, and his vermillion Sheild, which *Alquesa* had given him. Now you are to take notice that this strange Vessel had not above an houre since overtaken the Christians, and by force of Oares had outgone all the other ships: without any of them having the power to board her, to know who sailed therein. They who saw them did much marvell from whence so many Apes came, and wherefore: but all was done by enchantment, as you shall hereafter hear: let this satisfie you, that it came so neere to *Constantinople*; thus the Emperor knew by their Flags and streamers, that all this Fleet were Christians, wherefore being exceeding glad, he went with a good company to receive those who came to aid him. Nevertheless, before I passe any farther, I think you ought to hear and know, how these Lords and Ladies of the *Firme Island* were disinchanting; and who gave them a vessel so opportunely to come to the succour of the Emperor.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXI.

How the Kings, Lords, Ladies, and Damselfs enchanted in the Firme Island, were awakened, and of their travels into Thrace by the meanes of Alquist.



AOLIDON (who in his time, nor since ever had any one equall to him for Magick, and Astrologie) foreseeing the affaires which should happen to the old Emperor of *Constantinople*; made the enchantment of the Lion, and the Sword, that *Lisuart* conquered, when he received the order of Knighthood, and he could so well work in his science, that at the time that this sword should be drawn out of the body of the beast, and the great thunder heard (as it hath been already recited to you) all enchantments in the *Firme Island*, and many other places should cease, and *Melia* should dye, who was kept beyond the course of nature, more by the art of *Negromancy*, then any other meanes: she had of long time in her custody, the chiefest of *Apolidons* books, and so much practise of them, that she was second to none, in reference to this art, by which she assuredly knew, that she must leave this world and goe to all the devills that very day that *Lisuart* should be knighted: and therefore he fell in danger of death many times: but seeing him escaped out of her hands, she raised a spirit from the infernall deep, by the aid of which she hoped to hinder him in the conquest of the sword, which the Lion bare. This is that fantasme (whereof you have been told) who not being able to resist the will of God, instead of binding *Lisuart* laid at his feet the body of the Sorceresse, and carried her soule to the Devil: Now understand that at the same time that

these things were effected in *Ibrace*; King *Arban* of *Normales* was arived at the *Firme* Island, where he often times went to see the Countrie, and pray to God to have mercy on the poore enchanted creatures, who had so long time remained in the Palace of *Apolidon*, which was so covered with darknesse, since *Vrganda* had there made her conjuration, that it was impossible to see any appearance of walls, or of any other thing resembling a building; but he was in amazement, that the darke cloud that covered him, fell like a mist, and by little and little, this proud edifice returned into her first forme (wherefore without feare of any danger) he came into the defended chamber, where he saw *Amadis* beeing a sleep: yet holding his naked sword in his hand, then *Arban* drew him by the hand so strongly, that he awaked him on such a sudden, that *Amadis* being enraged, asked of him, what he would have. Sir, replied *Arban*, it is now above ten yeares that you have forgotten your selfe, for Gods sake goe forth of this misery. How? said *Amadis*, is it possible that I have slept so long? yea, verily, replied *Arban*: and for prooffe of it, doe you see my Lady *Oriana*, and these others what countenance they have, then he approached neer unto *Oriana*, much amazed at this wonder, and did so much that he awaked her: saying to her, Madam, you have liked sleeping as well as I, for it is, as it seemeth to me, you have slept enough. *Oriana* who verily thought that *Vrganda* had placed her in the chaire the same day, asked *Arban* who he was, who related to her all that was past: and that so it is so, said he, see you yet these other Lords and Ladies taken with a most deep sleep. By my God answered she, *Vrganda* hath very much deceived us; then comming to *Galaor* and *Esplandian*, and all the other whom shee awaked, and she told unto them all that *Arban* had told her; certainly never people were more astonied, and scarce could believe it; when they perceived *Arban* the Dwarf in such equipage; that none of them could for-

bear

bear laughing: then *Amadis* gave him a kick with his foot, saying to him, *Arban* thou takest too much paines, bridle my horse: *Arban* quite giddy arose, and thinking to finde the dore, began to run round the chamber as though he had been drunk, then their laugh increased when they heard Mr *Elizabeth* to snort, holding as yet in his hands the book that *Vrganda* gave him; wherefore *Esplandian* tooke him by the sleeve, and drew him very rudely, saying to him, in good faith sir, you dreame, you have taken so much pleasure in this book, that you have slept too too long; awake you good sir, and tell us what newes you have found there. Mr *Elizabeth* marvelling, as if he had fallen from the clouds, opened his eyes, and finding himselfe in such a condition, answered the Emperor; by my faith sir, I never had book so long in my hand, and studied lesse then I have done in this, of one thing I can assure my selfe, that since *Vrganda* put it into my hands, I have been so sleepeie that I can doe nothing but snort. And as they were thus all awaked of this strong sleep, the Governor of the Island came to tell *Amadis*, that two Vessels were arived at the Port: in one of which was *Vrganda* the unknown, and in the other a Damsel, who was accompanied with no other Mariners or Pilots, but Apes, and the Vessel that they had brought, was the bravest and best fitted in the world; but scarcely had he done his message, when *Vrganda* entred in where they were. Then these Lords and Ladies consulting, came to receive her, and as she kissed them one after another, she laughing, said to them: truly, though I laid you here, my intencion was no other (as I would have you understand) then to prolong your lives; and hinder the perils and dangers of death, which were likely to come upon you, without the sleep that you have had. Now it hath pleased the Lord to recall you into the world, by the Conquest which your son *Lisuart* hath obtained (said she to *Esplandian*) of a sword, which the wise *Apolidon* had of long time destined to him. And because I know

certainly

certainly, that *Alquif* the greatest Magician in the world hath sent to you his daughter, with a ship and Apes which are arived in the Port, to carrie you into *Constantinople*, which the Pagans have besieged, I will not make you any large recitall of the things that have happened since the day that I let you in here, but I counsell you, that you goe to Sea as the Damsel will pray you, and follow her and I will keep you company. Saying these words, the Damsel *Alquesa* entred in, and with great reverence said to *Amadis*, and to the other Princes, that *Alquif* her father would pray them, for their good, and the good of all Christendome to enter into her ship, and she would conduct them unto the place, where they should have both honor and pleasure: to this request they willingly consented, and through the advice of *Vr-ganda* they embarqued without delay: in such sort, (that to be brief) they arived at *Thrace* the same day that the company of Christians approached to *Constantinople*. So this Vessell guided by the Apes passed among them, yet none of the company did euerprize to bord her, to know who was in her: yet they wondred to see beasts so well taught; yet it was no marvell, for all was done by the industry of *Alquif* the Magitian; but if they found this strange *Amadis*, and the other of the *Firme Island* (seeing such an Army, and they so neer *Constantinople*, did much more wonder) nevertheless being landed (as you have been told) and seeing those of the City come forwards to receive them, they praised God for the mercy which he had bestowed on them; and instantly the Emperor who came first, espied *Amadis* and his son *Esplandian*. Then greatly wondring at so strange an adventure, ran with open armes to imbrace them, and addressing himselfe first of all unto *Amadis*, said to him, with tears freely trickling from his eyes: Sir, my brother, the Lord be praised for your so much desired returne. Alas! who would ever have thought, that I should see such an happye houre before I die? Sir, replied *Amadis*, he who never

forgets

forgets those that trust in him, well knew what would be necessary both for you and us: and for this reason hath delivered us out of darknesse, to come to revenge you of this most cursed people; who hath done you so much wrong. Then *Oriana* set forward, to salute the Emperor, who kissed her very graciously, and in kissing her, said to her: by my faith Madam, I now well know, that I was never more happy then now I am, having so sure and good a succour as yours. Sir replied she, considering your great goodnesse, we women ought to bear armes, as well as men, and come to succour you. So the Emperor held her no longer in discourse for that time because the other Kings, Princes, Ladies, and Damsels of the company approached to doe him reverence: and in the meane while the Knight of the Sphere, and *Lisuart*, who went not forth of the City so soon as the Emperor: but being informed that the Christians were landed, they came with their swords as yet bloody, to see if they knew any one of the company: and at the very first sight they found them of the *Firme Island*, who had been so many years bound in the Castle of *Apolidore*, by the force of *Vr-gandas* Conjurations. Then the two Knights, *Perion* and *Lisuart* went forward, giving great reverence to *Amadis*, desiring to kisse his hand. Now he knew them not at first sight, neither did *Esplandian*, *Oriana*, and much lesse *Leonorina*, at which the old Emperor could not hold from laughing, asking them, if that they had never seen them. God take me, Sir, said *Amadis*, not that I know: yet so it is, that to see their coats of maile painted of such a colour, it gives good prooffe and testimony that they are both bold and valiant Warriours. So they are truly, said the Emperor, and sons of the most valiantest men in the world: and doe you know them? this (pointing at *Perion*) is son of the Knight of the green sword, who heretofore conquered the *Endriague*: and is my daughter *Leonorina* mother to this other? At these words *Oriana*, and the Emperesse ran to embrace them, as if they had been ravish

p

visht

ravish't with too great delight, the teares fell from their eyes, which the Emperour seeing, said to them with a good grace: by my soule Ladies, their presence hath done so much service here, that *Constantinople* might be called happy for having them for her defence: and I more fortunate for the company and succour which they have done me at so good a time: for it is most certain (seeing mine old age) that I could not have had the strength that is requisite, to sustaine the miseries and woes which have hapned to me, since the day that you did depart from me, and I tooke upon me the Government of this Empire, in the absence of my son *Esplandian*; This good old man was as yet armed, and had not left of one peece of his harnesse, for he was in fear, least the Pagans should begin some new enterprize against the City: and his Armour was bloody since the fight in the morning. Wherefore *Galax* answered him: truly sir, he should have a bad judgement, which should maintaine that you have continually slept during these affaires; for these armes are witnesse enough, that your enemies have found, that your old age hath nothing lessened the strength of your courage, and that there is more strength in you, then in younger age: and yet they should had worse, if I had been by you, to make them feeble the desire I have to doe you service. Sir, *Galax*, said he, they are not so far off, but that they may come to see us, it may be before night: But seeing that God hath had so much remembrance of me, as to bring you hither, I hope the misfortune will fall on them; especially being accompanied with these Angels (said he, imbracing the Queen *Briolania*, and the other Ladies) who are sufficient to chase the devils out of this world if they should come out of hell to inhabit here. Ah, ah sir! said she, if those that are come to endamage *Thrace* ought to be driven out by women, I will be the first that will take Lance and Helmet to break their heads: at this speech the Emperour laughed, and kindly thanked her for it: then he came to imbrace *Florestan*, who

who kneeling downe on the ground to kisse his hand. But the Emperour lifted him up, and said to him: by my faith, good King *Florestan*, your noble acts are as reciprocal to your name, as it is possible, and it is likewise true, that to make your praise alwayes flourish, you have taken the paines to come and help this good old man, being weak and lame; Sir, answered he, to doe you service I shall alwayes be green and flourish. God will love you the better for it, said the Emperour: then looking a little aside on the Queen, *Sardamira*, *Alabilla*, and *Olinda*, he went to salute them, and seeing *Olinda* fairer then the rest, he said to her, Madam, those that have much travelled in *Spaine* have heretofore informed me, that *Linda* in that Language, is beauty in ours, and truly I believe it rather then ever: for if beauty were ever lost, it would be found in you, as much as in any Lady that I have seen to my knowledge: at this the young Princess blushed, but *Agries* answered the Emperour on her behalfe: Sir, she hath taken this faire countenance, as also these three Ladies, to present themselves before you, as *Cosen*, said he, you have done so much for me, as I well perceive that it is impossible for me to repeat what you have deserved, and ending this speech, he cast his eyes on the King of *Bohemio*, *Grafandor*, which he did not untill then see: and coming towards him, he imbraced him courteously, saying to him; truly my good friend, I alwayes thought, that in so good a businesse, the neighbourhood of us two should not easily be lost. No sir, replied *Grafandor*, and much lesse I desire I have to doe you service: and here is your Lady *Verganda*, who shall swear to you on my behalfe. Now the Emperour knew her not at first, so he excused himself very well for that time in entertaining her kindly, saying to her, ah Lady, you have too long disappointed us of this good company: when you please, you shall amend this wrong which is not small. Sir, answered she all that I have done hitherto, hath been to a good end: and you may now know better then ever, that

our Lord forgot you not, having brought them at such opportune a time. Truly I believe it, answered the Emperour. So this good old man received them one after another, shewing them all the honour that they deserved: and even to *Gandalin*, the Damsel of *Denmarke*, *Carmelle*, *Mr Elizabeth*, yea and *Ardan*: but he being amongst them was so little, that the Emperour saw him not, when the Dwarf came to pluck him by the Cloak, saying to him. Sir, I am come to be at your service as well as the others, wherefore shall not I be embraced as well as they? by my head, said the Emperour, *Ardan* my friend, there is no good reason for it: but thou appearest so little so tall personages that I could not see thee. Sir, said the Dwarf, I have a little body, but I have an unmeasurable desire to doe you service, who will neve hide himselfe in any place, were it among the greatest Giants in the world. The grace that the Dwarf spake these words with, and as it were in a choler, caused every one to laugh: during this discourse, *Alquesa* caused many horses and hacknies to be taken out of her Vessel: then addressing himselfe to the Knight of the Sphere, she said to him, Sir Knight, my Father your humble servant hath sent you these horses, and prayeth you to distribute them as well to the King your Father, as to Madam *Oriana*, and others, who kept company with them so long in the chamber of *Apsidon*. So *Perion* quickly knew her, wherefore he embraced her, and made her welcome: not onely for her Fathers gifts, but for the hope that he had that she brought him news from her, whom he could not forget neither day nor night: Nevertheless, the Damsel as wise and well advised, dissembled for that time what she thought: then *Perion* answered her: Damsel, my friend, it is not the first courtesie that I have received of the hands of sage *Alquesa*: but if God willing, I shall have opportunity to doe him some good service. Sir said she, he hath provided these Knights with armes, which I have given them before their imbarquing, and now he perhaps (as I have said)

said) that you give to each one of them one of these horses, especially to these Ladies, to whose good graces he now humbly recommends himselfe. Sir, said *Perion* to *Amadis*; you heare the request of this Damsel: ought I to deny her? oh no! to deny? answered *Amadis*, therein you should doe her wrong, and *Alquis* also, who have wished us so well: seeing that it is so, said *Perion*, then divide the present that he hath sent you, and let Madam *Oriana* have as many for her Ladies: to which they both agreed: and immediately *Alquis* drew forth of a Chest, (which two Esquires carried on their shoulders) a tent of an Inestimable value, which she presented to *Lisvart*, saying to him: most happie Knight, and more fortunate then any that hath been heretofore, my Father saluteth you in all humility, and hath sent you this tent, being the fairest in all *Asia*, in which he intreateth you to lodge (as long as this warr shall last) with King *Amadis* your Father, and these other Lords, who were enchanted in the Firme Island with him. And further he acquaints you by me, that you shall be better contented on the day that you shall meet him, then if you should conquer the one halfe of *Europe*. Damsell, answered *Lisvart*, I never saw him of whom you speak, to my knowledge: nevertheless I have a great desire to be acquainted with him, to doe him some courtesie, wherein he should imploy me: not onely for the Presents and promises, that you have made me on his behalfe, but having heard him esteemed of in many places. Then *Alquis* unfolded the tent, which was found so faire and rich, that never heretofore had the like been seen: and this rumour was so much spread, that the King of *Spaine*, *Brian* of *Monniste*, he of *Arviene*, *Don Bruneo*, *Quadrant* Prince of *Sansuegue*, and *Gasquin* King of *Fuisse* (who made the Vanguard of the Sea Army) heard the news thereof by a Skiffe that they sent before, to know where they were that had taken Land in the Apes barke, but when they heard this report, never were people more glad, and more abashed, and they suddenly

denly commanded their Souldiers to land, and continue in forme of a battell on the Land, untill they should have further Order from them. And entring into the Skiffe, they went to seek out *Amadis* and the rest. Great was the joy that was made for so happie a meeting: in the mean while the enemies (instead of defending the landing of those that came to succour Christians) made all possible expedition to fortifie their Campe, for their Spies had informed them, that without doubt, the next day they should have battell, which was the cause they kept themselves together: In the meane while that these things were a doing, the Emperour of *Trebisond* and his Army after they had for a long time sailed on the *Pontick* Sea, and for the more security kept a farre off from the parts of *Nazolia*, and gained the entrie of the Straights, a mile from the place where the Kings of *Giloffe*, and *Bugies* forces were floating, then not any of them having the boldnesse to stop the passage: but the Pagans lying at anchor, for fear of being assaulted behinde, by those that came towards the *Hellespont*, as they understood by the Master, who was taken in the little ship; as we have formerly told you, it was not long before the Emperour of *Constantinople* had tidings thereof, wherefore he consulted with *Amadis*, and therest, that the Ladies should returne back againe to the City, and that themselves should goe to receive this forreigne Prince; But all their diligence was not so timely but that he was out of his ship, accompanied with young *Florestan* and *Galuanes*, *Parmenir*, and *Dardary* King of *Brignie*. Truly the honour that these two old Emperors shewed to one another, and the entertainment that these Knights shewed to one another cannot be represented by writing, as also the goodnes which the Emperour of *Constantinople* expressed, to humble himselfe before the Emperour of *Trebisond*, to give him thanks for the assistance which he had received from him. Wherefore he said to him with the teares in his eyes; I know not Sir by what meanes to acknowledge the paines that you have taken

taken to come hither, to help this poore old creature out of misery, assaulted on all sides, and in a manner ready to fall to ruine, and in the greatest misery that ever was disinherited Prince. By my God, your presence so much delighteth me, that I may this day call my selfe the happiest man in the world, or that was borne of a woman. Ah sir, my brother, said the Emperour of *Trebisond*, I have done but my duty: for we are naturally bound to help each other, and your so much renowned goodnesse obligeth all Princes that are able to help you, principally against the common enemies of our faith: and as he had ended this speech, he perceived *Lisuart*, and the Knight of the Sphere very neer him: then addresseing himselfe first to *Lisuart*, he said to him, truly Knight, I very much rejoyce to see you in so good health, considering the wicked speech of that most unhappy *Melia*, which she sent us since your departure: but as for you (said he, merrily speaking to the Knight of the Sphere) I shall never in all my life forget the wrong that you did me, the day that you went from my Court, without daigning to speak to me, nor any other, as I know, and is the principall reason why I am come to finde you, to avenge my selfe for it. Sir, replied *Perion*, I humbly intreat you to pardon me, for I am ready to suffer for it, what punishment you please, although there is no fault in me, as you may know, having truly understood of all that is past, during the conference between them, the young *Florestan*, *Galuanes*, and *Parmenir* discoursed with *Amadis*, and the other Knight of their acquaintance, relating to each other their passed fortunes. It began to grow late, wherefore the Emperour of *Constantinople* invited the Emperour of *Trebisond* to lodge in his Palace: but he bravely excused himselfe, because he had no intention to enter into the City, (as he said) before the enemies were expelled out of *Thrace*: and for this cause commanded his tents and Pavilions to be made ready. Nevertheless *Amadis* so much intreated him, that he lodged in that which *Alquis* gave to *Lisuart*, which was such

such, as you have heard. And after a long conference between the two Emperours, giving the good night each to other, the Emperour of *Constantinople* returned to keep his City, and the other to his Camp, where *Amadis*, and those of the *Firme Island* kept him company: nevertheless they tooke a walke into *Constantinople*, where he went to salute the old Emperesse, which they yet found troubled with a swooning, which had taken her, for the great joy she had to see her daughter in good health, which she certainly thought to be dead. And as the Emperour entred in, where they lay on her bed, he began to speak to her. Madam, you now have the company of your daughter and other Ladies: but see, if I am ill provided of Knights. Then *Amadis*, *Lisuart*, and the others went forwards to do him reverence. If then this Lady rejoyced, it is you may thinke, especially, when she saw her son in Law, who she held in her armes above a quarter of an houre, without being able to speak one word: But for this night they had no time to discourse much longer with them, because the time pressed the Knights of the *Firme Island* to returne towards the Emperour of *Trebisind*: wherefore taking leave of her and the Emperour, they went forth of the City, and entred the Camp. Now the Knight of the Sphere had not yet had an opportunity privately to discourse with *Alquesa*, to know in what estate she left the Princesse *Gricilerea*, for whose sake he died an hundred times a day: but as soone as *Amadis* and the others were departed, he and *Lisuart* retired to their quarters, where she came to finde them. Neverthelesse, at first she very well forbore to speak that which she had in charge, for she did not know whither *Perion* was content that she should discourse thereof before his companion, which *Perion* perceiving, both assured and perswaded her, that it would be pleasant to him, considering the great love which he bore him. Wherefore she drew forth a Letter which she had in her bosome, and presented it to him, saying to him, my Lady recommendeth her selfe very kindly

kindely to you, see here what she hath written to you, and then I will tell that which she hath commanded me to acquaint you withall. *Perion* tooke the Letter, and breaking the Seal, therein he read that which followeth.

THE great pleasure that I have received by your Letter, and the presents that you have sent me by this Damsell, hath renewed in my sad heart the desire which my soul suffers for your long absence. And dear Friend, beleve me, were not the continuall presence of your Physiognomy in the eyes of my remembrance, it would be impossible to resist the hard assault of so many dayes, which love hath brought me to, which was in the same day that you came dumb into this Court, and would not deigne to speak unto me: But the hope that I have of your sudden returne (as this Messenger as-sureth me) administers some strength to me, to bear that which I now indure without intermission. Now to conclude, and to the end that you may with the more convenient opportunity come to see me, which I hope you will, I intreat you to keep neer the person of the Emperour my Father: who will not faile (as I hope) to bring you with him, your affaires being done. In the meane time I would very earnestly desire you, that by all meanes you would endeavour to release the faire young Gentleman *Lisuart* out of danger: being certaine, that if you will doe so much for her, and thereby you shall come to as much honour as the most favoured of fortune, and renowned Knight which this day beareth armes. The which I doe very earnestly request of you, for the good of my sister, who is so much affectionate of him, that she could not survive except our Lord

comfort

The sixt Booke of

comfort her, in the sorrow that she hath taken from the day that she lost the sight of him; and she dieth hourly for his sake. And because I have given in charge to Alquefa, to relate to you what I have above written, I beseech you to believe it, as comming from her who is more yours then her own.

Gricilerea.

Perion having read this Letter over and over, entred into such deep thoughts, that he continued a long time without speaking one word, which Lisuart seeing, could not forbear, but spake to him: how now Uncle, I thought that this Damself had brought you pleasant newes, but I thinke they have made; ou sad. I pray you tell me, whether Madam Gricilerea hath sent you any thing that should make you so melancholy. They did alwayes communicate to one another all things that happened, although they were never so secret, and of never so great concernment: wherefore the Knight of the Sphere said to him: You are in the wrong, for I thought of the pleasure I shall one day enjoy when I goe to Trebisind, and of what my Lady hath written, who speaks of you as you may see in the Letter. Then Lisuart read it, and was much more content then Perion had been, when he understood the paines that Onolorea indured for him. Wherefore with teares in his eies he said to Alquefa, Ah! the imprisonment that I suffered was not so grievous to me, as the remembrance of the thing that kills me alive! How? said she sir, doe you complaine of the good that is wished to you? No, said he, but for the evill that she indures by whom I live. Then said the Damself, no newes will be more welcome to her, then when she shall hear of you, for when I left her, she did despaire of your life. Therefore you may both rejoyce, for never was two Knights so well beloved (of two such Ladies as they are) as you are. And as for you, said she to the Knight of the Sphere, you shall

shall bear these armes no longer: for I will give you such armes, as I gave this day to King Amadis, and the others of the Firme Island, which my Father sent them. My great friend, said Perion, I am so much obliged to you, that I will be alwayes yours, on condition you tell me how you left my Lady Gricilerea, and what discourse you had with her whilst you staid there. In good faith said Alquefa, that I will doe. Then she discoursed all to him in such manner, that it was neer day when they went to sleep.

CHAP. XXII.

How the Pagan Princes met in Counsell, to consult what they were to doe, knowing the great aid come to the Christians: and of the resolution which they tooke.



He Pagans Army that was at Sea went by the Straights towards Natolia. And the Land Army that was with Armato fortified themselves in their Campe. And knowing of the great aid that was come to the Emperour of Constantinople, they met together in Counsell to consult what they should doe: where it was concluded that their Camp should be fortified, and trenches made, and so they should remaine to see what their enemies would doe, and in the meane time they would burie their dead, and heale the wounded, which indeed weremany. And to the end (said Armato) that our enemies may not affright us; I am of opinion that all this night the Trumpets and Drums may sound with great joy. During this Counsell the Christians on the other side did so well, that all their forces were landed before break of day, and were in good order to receive their enemies, if they should

come to assaile them. Then there came to the Tent of *Amadis*, the Emperour of Rome, the Kings of *Sobradise*, of *Sardinia*, of *Ireland*, of *Scotland*, *Bohemia*, *Spaine*, *Naples*, *Senswague*, *Mongaze*, of *Suesie*, the Queen of *Calafea*, and *Norandell*, all which had brought with them good store of Souldiers, as well horse as foot, and passing the *Hellespont*, *Norandell*, and *Frondale* had joined with them, with the Army of the Emperor of *Constantinople*, which staid to conduct them. The reason why they came to *Amadis*, was to consult about what they had to doe: but they concluded on nothing at that time, but onely to entreat the Emperor of *Trebisond* to be their Commander in Chiefe, and Captaine General in this their enterprize. And therefore they went to him, to intreat him to take that charge upon him. But he would not, but thanked them and excused himselfe, and said that the Emperor of *Constantinople* was fitter by reason that he had already knowne the force of the enemy. Wherefore it was concluded to send to the Emperor to know his pleasure, who no sooner heard thereof, but he mounted on horseback, and went to them, where when he came, they told him what had been done amongst them, and to that end they all intreated him to accept of the charge, and they would obey him in all his commands. But he knew so well how to excuse himselfe that in the end, and by the advice of all the Emperor of *Trebisond* remained Captaine of the Army in the field, and the Emperour of *Constantinople* was Captaine Generall of the Forces in the Towne, as he was before. It was now dinner time, wherefore the Tables were covered in *Amadis* his Tent; but the first course was hardly eaten, when a Damsell armed at all points came before them, carrying in her hand a bowe of Ivorie, and a sheaf of Arrowes hanging at her side. Then without saluting any of them, she demanded which was the Emperor of *Trebisond*, and *Amadis* King of *Gaule*, and of great *Britaine*. So they were both shewn to her, wherefore she addressed her selfe to them, and with a great boldness said

to them: Here, take this writing, and give me answer that shall become you. Then she gave to each of them a Letter, and another to Queen *Calafea*, saying to her: Madam, your habit declares what you are, read this paper which is sent to you and consider of it. So these three Letters were read, and that to the Emperour contained that which followes.

ARMATO King of Persia mortal Enemy of the Christians, servant of our Gods, a chiefe Protector of their holy Law: to thee Emperour of *Trebisond*. Know that to have the Empire of *Constantinople* I have lately entred the field with so great a force as is well known. And because I understand that you are lately arrived to the aid of my Enemy, I thought good to send a Challenge to thee, who art the principal defender of the Grecian Empire, against me who am the chiefeft desirer of its ruine: Let not thy old age be an excuse unto thee, for if thou art old, I am older. The Combate that I desire is onely to get honor, and trie with blowes of Lance and Sword, which of us two is the most favoured of fortune: wherefore make me an honorable answer.

Armato.

In good faith said the Emperor, *Armato* desires the Combate, and he shall have it, but instead of increating his renown he shall lessen it, as I hope, for he shall know by the strength of my arme, which (it may be) is more strong then he thinks. Then *Amadis* took that which was sent to him and read it, wherein was contained that which followes.

GRIFFLANT Lord of the Savage Island, Ser-
vant of the great Gods of the Sea, desirous of the
ruine of the cursed Christians, of whom you Amadis
King of great Britaine art Defendor: neverthelesse
that hath not so much moved me, as the great desire I
have to trie my selfe against thee, who art so much re-
nownea throughout the world. The principal occasion
why I am come out of my Country, hath not onely been
to aide the great King of Turks, but also to get reputati-
on and fame by Armes. Wherefore seeing that fortune
hath so much favoured me to let me fitly meet thee: I
pray let us enter the field against one another, and I as-
sure thee that if my Gods give me the victory, I shall
esteeme my selfe the happiest Knight that ever was born,
and although I doe not vanquish thee, yet I shall no
whit loose my renown, for it is well known how many
able men thou hast overcome and vanquished. And at
the furthest I can but loose my life which I value not at
all. Therefore grant me this request, in doing whereof
thou shalt doe me and thy selfe honor.

Griffant.

I wonder at this (saide Amadis) I never knew Griffant as
I know: but I thinke him to be a gentle Prince, which
his Letter well witnesseth. And you Madam, saide he to
Calasea, is yours a Love Letter, or a challenge? you shall
know presently saide she. Then she began to read that which
followes.

PIntiquinestra, Queen of the Amazonian women,
to thee Calasea who governeest in the strange
Island

Island of Califurnus. I adverteise thee, that to make
known my Prowesse, to these that continually follow
armes, I have lately left my Country, and am arrived in
this field, where I understood that thou art newly arrived,
to defend those whom we hope utterly to destroy. And
because thou art esteemed so valiant in fight, I doe
think that if I can vanquish thee in open Battell, it
will be immortall renowne unto me. And there is no
ods between woman to woman, therefore trie thy
force with mine, when it may be judged who hath
best to a Crown, and Government of women, who gaine
men by love and by force.

Pintiquinestra.

These Letters being thus read, the Messenger desired an
answer. Damsell saide the Emperour of Trebisonde, we will
ere night send one of ours to you, and therefore you may
depart when you please. Wherefore the Damsell took her
leave of them, and mounting on her palfrey, she rid unto
Armato, who was in the company of Griffant, Pintiquine-
stra, and many other good Knights. And in the meane
time the Christian Princes went to councell, whether the
Combate should be accepted, or refused with some ho-
norable excuse? there were divers opinions, in such manner,
that the most part concluded, that considering the old
age of the ancient Emperour of Trebisonde, he might, and
ought without dishonour refuse Armato, being a thing de-
manded by him more through pride of heart then any rea-
son: but the Emperour himselfe would not agree to this
Judgment, but desired the combate above all things:
wherefore the Queen Calasea and Amadis thought good,
that a Knight should be sent to Armato to accept of the
field. But the old King Arban of Norwales declared that
it had been presented by a Damsell, and therefore a Dam-
sell should returne an answer, and therefore Carmella was
sent

sent for, who being arived, a Letter with these instructions was delivered unto her. You must goe said Amadis to the Kings Armato, Griffant, and the Queen Pintiquinestra, to whom you shall present this writing on the behalf of the Emperor of Trebifond, the Queen Calasea and me. You shall tell them that we accept of the Combate as they have desired, and at what day and houre they please we will be ready: as for the rest agree with them, as you know well how to doe. Carmella being prompt and wise in the execution of such affaires, suddenly mounted on horseback; but appproaching neere to the Campe of the Turks, she was staied by the watch, and carried to Armato, who was then in a great Tent, in Counsell with chiefe of the Army. These Lords being advertised that a Damsell Messenger had brought them news from the Christians, commanded that she should have entrance. Then she (according to her custome) which was not to reverence any but *Esplandian*) saluted neither King nor State, entred into the Tent, and presented the writing unto those she was commanded, the tenor whereof followeth.

VV E by the grace of God, Emperor of Trebifond, Amadis King of Gaule and great Britaine, and Calasea reigning in the Isles of Califurnus, where Gold and precious stones doe grow in abundance (in answer to three writings, which you Armato King of Persia, Griffant, Prince of the Savage Island, and Pintiquinestra Ladie over the Amazonian women, have sent us) doe let you know, that our voyage into this Country of the Levant hath been caused in defence, and for increase of the Law of Jesus Christ, in whom we beleeve, and to destroy those who be contrary thereunto. Wherefore when we had received your writings, we have been content to agree to the Combate
which

which you demand with such weapons as you shall choose: as for the field, we thinke fit that it be before this great City: hoping by our God alone (in whose hand are victories) that he will give it us over you, to the confusion of your Idols, and damage, and dishonour of your persons. And because this Damsell hath in charge and power from us to agree, to the rest we leave it to her: and thus far we sweare, and promise by the word of a King, that during this Combate, none of our Campe shall stir to hurt or damage you, on condition that you doe the like on your part, of which we will have assurance, and promise sworne as it is reasonable.

This writing being read before all the Assembly. Armato spoke for them all, and said to Carmella, Damsell, indeed we did expect no answer: and you may informe them upon my honour, that during the Combate, there shall not a man in my Campe stir to help us, or endamage them, and let the victory remaine where it shall please fortune. After Carmella had taken the assurance requisite, she returned to the Campe of the Christians, where she then found these Lords together. To whom she related the resolution of the whole matter. Then they (after some conference) departed out of the Tent, and mounted on horseback to goe visit the Ladies whom the Emperor of Trebifond had not scene since his arival. They being then entred the Town, entring into the Palace, the two Empresses mother and daughter, and the Queene Oriana, and all the rest went before to receive the Emperor of Trebifond: then being conducted into the great Hall, they discoursed of many things in such manner, that it happened that the Kings of Hungaria and Cildadan (who discoursed with Oriana) about the Combate that was to be the next day, between two Christian Knights and Calasea, against the two Pagans and the Pintiquinestra. Which so much daunted the good Lady,
R that

that she changed colour in short time, two or three times, doubting that some mishap might happen to her Lord: wherefore she said, what reason is there that he should trie himselfe having so often tried his person already, he hath sons that may doe in his stead. But they had not long discovered, when a Spie came from the Enemies Campe to advertise the Emperor of *Constantinople*, that the enemies had sent Irish men to the King of *Giloffe*, and *Bugie*, to enterprize the Christians, whilest the two Camps remained at the Combate which *Armato* had demanded. And for this cause these Lords were forced to leave talking with these women, and enter into Counsell: where they concluded that the Duke of *Ortilensa*, the Earle of *Alastre*, and the Prince *Alarin* should have the charge of the Vessels of *Trebisond* with twentie thousand fighting men, besides those that were already in them. And that the Earle *Frindale* and *Norandell* should likewise take care of those that they had brought from the Defended Mountaine: and as for the rest they were lookt unto as occasion required. Then they sent to the Captaines and Souldiers that every man should stand on his guard, telling them what they had heard, to the end they might not be surprized, nevertheless this information was false. It is very true that the Pagans had questioned such a treason, but it was broken by *Almantix* of *Liqua*, a gentle Prince and Loyall Knight, who would in no wise consent thereunto, in respect of the oath made to *Casmella*. A few dayes after these two Sea Armies encountred one another, and there was such a fight, that the like was never knowne in the Levant Countrey.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIII.

How the Emperor of Trebisond, Amadis, and the Queene Calasea, fought with the Kings Armato, Griffant, and the Queen Pintiquinestra.



He Emperor of *Trebisond*, and those who accompanied him, having given the good night to the Ladies, retired for that evening into their Pavillions untill the next morning, when they were to fight as it had been agreed on. They slept not all the night, but watched continually in devout prayers, praying God to grant unto them that which should be most for his honor and glorie. Then at break of day, *Amadis* sent to the Captaines of the Army, praying them that each of them should keepe his men in readines, to resist the Enemies, if by chance they should stir, breaking the promise which they had made together. And soone after the Message was solemnly celebrated by the Patriarke of *Constantinople*: which being done, *Alquesa* gave to each of them a harnesse, like to those which she had presented us from her father to the Knights of the Firme Island, where-with they armed themselves, and mounting on their horses, they were conducted to the place assigned for the Combate. The old Emperor of *Constantinople* carried the Emperor of *Trebisonds* Lance, and *Esplandian* carried his Helmet. *Arquifil* Emperor of *Rome*, *Amadis* his Lance, and *Galaar* his Helmet, *Lisuart* carried the Queen *Calaseas* Lance, and the Knight of the Sphere her Helmet. They being thus furnished and accompanied (with a great number of Kings, and valiant Knights) entered the field, which was neere the City, that the Ladies who sate upon the Fort, could not onely see the Combate but also hear the talke of the Combatants. So the three Pagans being well accompanied came soone after, and this day *Armato* did weare a black

harnesse, riding on a black horse, in testimony of the grief which he had for the death of *Melia* his sister. The Souldans of *Alape* and *Persia* served him as Squires, the one carrying his Lance, and the other his Helmet. The King *Griffant* was armed to the contrary, with green armes and Serpents with two heads seperated from their bodies, and did ride on a great Horse, the fiercest that could bee seen. And he had not this device without cause: for in his younger years he had fought with a Serpent, and valiantly killed it, to the great profit of the Country wherein he dwelt *Almenia*: brother to the Souldan of *Liques* carried his Lance, and the King of *Jerusalem* his Helmet. The Queen *Pintiquinestra* sitting on a Turkish velvet harness, with fringe of Gold, and in her shield was figured a dead Giant representing the Victory, which she had sometimes had over a neighbour of hers, the greatest man was to be found in his time. And this Queen was so dextrous on horsebacke, that none would have accounted of her otherwise then of an accomplished brave Knight, so long as she had her Helmet on her head, but when it was off, her beaurie was so great, that it would move the greatest man in the world to desire it. The King of the Giant Island carried her Speare, and the *Infante* *Gradaflex* her Helmet. Thus these brave warriors entered the field, with a noise of Trumpets. And they put themselves in readinesse to encounter one another, and met together with so marvellous a force, that without failing they stroke right against one another, and their selves flew up in peeces into the aire: and so they met with bodies, Shields and heads so fiercely, that they fell downe in the field, except the Queen *Calasea* who was forced to bow with the shake. They who were the Spectators of this first encounter did verily think that *Amadis* was wounded to death, for he had a truncheon of a lance in his shield, which put *Oriana* into such a feare, that she had well nigh swooned, but she soone saw him on his feet, and march on bravely towards his enemy, who was likewise got up. And as *Amadis* advanced to charge him,

him, the Queen *Calasea* came to him on horseback, to ask him whither he was wounded. No Madam, answered he, God be thanked, I am no otherwise then well for as far as I know) fortune hath been more favourable to you then to any of us; but they ended their discourse, their enemies approaching: wherefore *Calasea* dismounted from her horse, because she would have no inequality between her and *Pintiquinestra*, who had lost her horse, as you have heard. Then there began a sport between them, not childrens play, but of two persons who endeavoured by all meanes to defeat one another: and on the other part, the two old men, the Emperor of *Trebisond* and *Amato* used one another so roughly, that the field was bestrewed with peeces of their shields, and Coats of Mayle, and the green grasse was died with their warme red blood. But if these two made the beholders to be abashed it was nothing comparable to what they saw *Amadis* and *Griffant* doe: for even as two Smiths take pleasure to beat the hot Iron on the Anvill, even so these two warriors continued smiting on one another without any breathing. But in the end *Griffant* found himselfe somewhat astonished, because he had never dealt with a man that had so put him to his shifts. *Pintiquinestra* and *Calasea* were not in the mean time idle, but all the Spectators were so taken up with beholding *Amadis* and *Griffant*, that they minded no others, especially the Knight of the Sphere, and *Lisort*, who untill then had not seen by effect the cause of their fathers renown. For which cause they spake to *Galar* in this manner. Sir, what doe you thinke of these two Combatants? are they not fit to be a president to all those who desire to follow armes? Do you see how the King handleth *Griffant* as he speaketh. He doth said *Galar* as he is accustomed to doe in the like cases. The two Queens were then so weary, that leaning on their swords to take breath, they took so great pleasure in looking on *Amadis* and *Griffant*, that they tooke truce with themselves, the better to behold this Combate, untill the one or the other should be vanquished

And to tell the truth, they maintained themselves so well, that by the space of one houre or more, it was not possible to tell to whom fortune was most favourable. For *Griffant* was a puissant man, and of a great heart. Nevertheless in the end he began to faint through loss of his blood, and every one assured themselves that *Amadis* would have the victory. Therefore *Amadis* desired him to have pitie on himselfe, and he would save his life and honor, if he would be ruled by him. And how shall that be said *Griffant*? as for my life, I value it not, for death is common to all, but if it now stand with my honor and renown, I will obey you. I pray you then said *Amadis*, leave this ungodly and wicked Law, and take ours which is the true and perfect, and never doe damage to the Emperor of *Constantinople*, but help him with all your power. By *Mercurie* answered *Griffant*, you preach very well! doe you think to vanquish me sooner with your words then with your weapons? therefore guard your selfe from me, for I hope before I die to carbonadoe you handsomely if I can. Then he rook his sword in both his hands and thought to have given *Amadis* a blow on the head, but he defended himselfe with his shield, and gave *Griffant* such a blow on the leg, that he was forced to fall on his knees to susteine himselfe, which *Amadis* seeing, he tooke him by the Helmet, and thrust his sword into his body, and so he fell down dead: then giving him a blow with his foot on his bellie, he marched towards *Armato*, to whom he cryed: King, thou shalt presently dye by my hands, for you have reigned too long to hure this Country. *Armato* being afraid to hear himselfe thus threatned, by him who he most feared of any man in the world, began to complaine to him against whom he had enterprized the Combate, saying to him, I know not Emperour if you will suffer a second with you, to endamage me, considering the agreement we have had together, if you doe so you will procure your selfe the name of a Traitor. That shall not be if it please God, said the Emperour. And addressing himselfe to *Amadis*, he desired him

him to retire. Then began the fight between them two to be more cruell then ever. The two Queens had remained quiet un ill the Combate of *Amadis*, and *Griffant* was ended, which when it was finished, and *Pintiquinesra* seeing the Emperor to refuse the aide of *Amadis*, and *Armato* himselfe to stand greatly in feare of him, she was afraid least he should come to her. Wherefore she prevented him, and marching towards him, she said to him with a good grace, Sir Knight, it is well knowne of all the endeavour that the Queene *Calisea* and I have used to vanquish one another: nevertheless we have been so equall in our fight, that no man can give certaine judgment to whom the honor must remaine. And I have now seen that with my owne eyes which I did heare by your renowne, and I have known so much Knighthood in you, that to have your friendship and acquaintance I am determined not onely to leave the Combate, but also to be baptized, and beleve in the God of your Law: upon Condition, that during the war begun by the Pagans, against the Emperor of *Constantinople* you be content that I accompanie you, and as soone as it be ended, you give to me in mariage some Knight of your Linnage worthy of me, who am Queen and Ladie of so many Countries, that I command all my neighbours: When *Amadis* understood the will of *Pintiquinesra*, he was more glad then if he had conquered the best City of *Asia*: wherefore he answered. Truly Madam, I am very joyfull of your good will, that I may this day name my selfe the happiest Knight of Christendome, God having given me the meanes to bring out of the way of damnation so noble a Queen as you are. And as for the Covenants which you demand, either to accompanie, or to provide you a husband: you may assure your selfe that I will obey you, not onely in a matter so reasonable, but also in what else you will require of me, even to name my selfe your Knight all my life wheresoever I shall be. By my Faith said the Queene, it is good reason that you are esteemed, and the most Courteous King

King in the world. Saying so she set her knees to the ground to kisse his hands : but *Amadis* lovingly took her up, and graciously imbraced her. When *Queene Calafea* saw them upon these points, she suddenly pulled off her Helmet, and throwing it on the ground, she took her sword by the point, and presenting the pummell thereof to the *Queen Pintiquinestra*, she said to her : Madam, seeing that you have vanquished your selfe, and that without doubt I could not have resisted you; it is good reason that I render unto you the honour which you deserve. Ah! Madam, answered *Pintiquinestra*, you doe that which I ought! and so striving to give their sword, to one another, *Amadis* went between them, and caused them to exchange swords, that their honors might be equall. During these passages, the two old men, *Armato* and the Emperor of *Trebisond* laboured very much to performe their Combate. But *Armato* had somewhat fainted since *Grisslant* had been vanquished. Wherefore the Emperour charged him nimbly, and in such manner, that he gave him so great a blow with his sword, that it entred through armor, and went a handfull into his flesh just at the joint of his left shoulder, so that in small time his soule departed, and he fell downe dead in the place. Which gave such great joy to the Christian Army, that every one praised God, especially *Oriana* and the other Ladies. The Trumpets and Fifes did sound with great joy, and horses were brought to the Conquerors, who took their way to their Tents, where they were accompanied by many Kings and great Lords, who honored *Pintiquinestra* as much as they could possible.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIV.

How Almirix of Liquea was chosen Generall of the Pagans Army: and of a Dwarfse which he sent into the Host of the Christians, to Queen Pintiquinestra.



Hese victorious Knights being descended into the Tent of *Amadis*, with the *Queen Pintiquinestra* and *Calafea*, they were soone disarmed, but they had no dangerous wound found about them. The principall of the Army did much wonder what caused the two Queens to parlie, being in the midst of their Combate: wherefore they prayed *Pintiquinestra* to tell them. So she told them particularly what had happened, and their discourse was so long, that it was high time to goe to dinner. And so they spent the rest of the day in discourse about their enemies. She was as eloquent a woman in her speech as any in the world, and had so good a grace accompanied with a beautie so excellent, that *Perion* son of *Galaor* fell in love with her, and in time enjoyed her, as you shall heare in this our History. Not long after there arived at the Tent a Dwarfse, who was soone known by the Emperour of *Trebisond*; for it was the same that brought the writing from *Melia*, when *Lisuart* was carried away by *Gradasilea*, as you have formerly heard. Then the Dwarfse went to the *Queene Pintiquinestra*, and with great audacity said to her, *Queene Pintiquinestra*, *Almirix* of *Liquea* (who is newly chosen Commander in chief by the decease of my Sovereigne Lord) hath sent thee thy six thousand women, because he is resolved not to have any aid of those whose Leader and Chiefe is a wicked Traitor. And he had put them all to the Sword, but that he considered the paines they tooke to gaine the City

S

the

the second day of thy arivall: but if for the future any of them shall happen into his hands, he will make them examples of Justice. And as for thy selfe he is ready to prove his person against thine that thou art a Traitor, therefore give me answer to justifie your selfe. Dwarfes my friend, answered the Queen, I am glad of the returne of my women, and if he hath a desire to make me know that which I never yet did know, nor never will, (if please God) which is treason, let him come to the place from whence he came this morning, and there he shall finde me ready to make him confesse that he hath hid in his throat. This answer of the Queens was commended by all the Knights present, especially by *Lisuart* who said to the Dwarfes. My friend when thou hast related to *Alminix* the answer of this faire and wise Queen, I pray tell him that a Knight in her Company sends to him that he did not well, to send such injurious words to the Queene, being in company with so many valiant Knights, but rather to them, not that I have a small esteeme of her, but for the honor of Chivalry. And if he thinks good, tell him I will take armes for her, and will performe what ever she hath promised by thee. The Dwarfes hearing him speak with so good a confidence, looked earnestly on him, that he might know him againe. Then taking his leave of the Company, he returned to *Alminix*, where he staid but little before he carried an answer to the Queen, how his Master accepted of the Combate, but not said he this day, for it is now late, but to morrow by break of day, upon Condition that you give him assurance of Christians, as he will of his Campe. And as for you (Knight of the true Crosse) said he to *Lisuart*, he sends word to you, that to satisfie the desire which you have to fight, he will bring with him a King of no lesse esteeme then was *Armatto*. And you shall finde him so good a Champion, that he will put you to it, for he is much greater in bodie then you are. Now he called *Lisuart* by this name of the true Crosse, because he had a red Crosse in his Sheild, but *Amadis* knowing that he had

another

another like that between his two teats, he found this name so conformeable to his nature, that he prayed him not to change it from thence forwards, in such manner, that for a long time after he was alwayes called so. *Lisuart* then hearing the Dwarfes summon him to the Combate, spake thus to him: Dwarfes, thy Master doth very much for me, in giving me occasion to accompany the Queen in so good a business. You may tell him that I accept of the Combate with him that he promiseth me, and if he be great as you say, men are not measured by the ell, but by the good heart and courage. So the Dwarfes staid not any longer, but tooke his leave of the Christian Lords, to returne to *Alminix*, and the other Kings who had sent him, whom he found embalming the dead bodies of *Armatto* and *Griffant* to send them into their Countries, waiting a better opportunitie to performe their funerals: but so soone as they heard the report of the Dwarfes, they were extreame joyfull, especially the King of the Giant Island, father to *Gradaflea*, who was he against whom the Knight of the true Crosse had to doe, and he had enterprized the Combate in hopes to vanquish him, and make him publikely confesse the manner of his deliverance: for which cause *Gradaflea* was very sad, for she loved *Lisuart* more then her owne selfe, and knowing the Prowesse of her Father, she thought it impossible that he would withstand him: so that she did continually thinke how she might breake this enterprize. Once she remembered her selfe that *Lisuart* owed her one gift, and that it was best to pray him to defer the Combate. Then againe she considered, that for so small a request he would remaine quit to her, and she should remaine out of hopes to have his love. Thus she could not tell what to doe, but she thought at the furthest, if her father should vanquish him then she would beg his life, and so he would be more obliged to her then before, and in this resolution she slept, untill the next morning, when things happened, as you shall heare.

CHAP. XXV.

Of the Combate that was between the Knight of the true Cross, and the King of the Giant Island, the Queene Pintiquinestra and Almirix of Liquea, Captaine of the Pagans Army; and of the discourse which Gradafilea had with Lifvart, about the saving of her Father.



He night which putteth every thing to silence, gave some rest to those who were to fight; but soon as the day came on, after the Knight of the true Cross had heard Mass, he went to Arme himselfe in the Tent of Amadis, where was already arived the Queene Pintiquinestra. And as his Armor was putting on his back, Alquesa entred the Tent (who had been sent by the Ladies of Constantinople, to know at what houre they would enter the field) and spake thus to him in his eare. Sir Knight, I am sure that Madam Onolore will soon hear of this fight, and therefore carry your self well, that you may gain honour, and not lose your love and life together. This troubled the Knight of the true Cross so much, that he could not speake one word: And Amadis prayed Alquesa to returne into the Town, to bid the Ladies get on the walls, for they would presently enter the field. Pintiquinestra was then ready to mount on horse-back, but she complained for want of a good sword. Madam, said Amadis, I have one which I have conquered, and tried in many good places, therefore I pray let it serve your necessity; and I would not present it to you, but that I esteeme you as my second self. Sir said she, I would not take it, but that I will deliver it to morrow safe and sound with many thanks. So Amadis girded it on her, and soon after she and the Knight of the true Cross went out of the Tent, and their horses at the entrance

trance whereon they mounted, accompanied with many valiant men, as Amadis, that served the Queene that day as a Squire, carrying for her to the place of the Combate, a shield and Lance, and Calasca her Helmet. The Emperor of Trebisond and Constantinople did the like for Lifvart; and because they found within the List, Almirix of Liquea, and the King of the Giant Island waiting for them, they made no long Ceremonies before they began the Combate. These Pagan Princes were armed with black Armes for grief of Armato; and the King of the Giant Island had a large shield, whereon was portraicted two wounded Giants dead, and he did seem by his countenance to be a very valiant man. The Trumpets soon began to sound, and the Knight of the true Cross, and the King of the Giant Island came against one another, and the King of the Giant Island was cast from his horse, and the Knight of the true Cross had the like fortune, if he had not gotten hold of his horses maine. On the other side, the Queene Pintiquinestra, and Almirix, were not the meane time idle, although their fortune differed from the others, for they broke their Lances, and neither of them was moved out of their saddle, to the wonder of the beholders. In the mean time Lifvart turned his bridle, and seeing his enemy on his feet, he left his horse also; then there began a most cruell conflict, and they charged one another so fiercely, that they were often forced to kneel on the ground. Thus they spared one another so little, that the field was in many places dyed with their blood, and with the pieces of the Harnesses; when the King retiring on one side, spake thus to his enemy; I think sir Knight, that the day is long enough for us to end our controversy, I pray you therefore let us take breath a little. Lifvart had not forgotten what was said to him of Onolore, and therefore he would not make any answer, but redoubling his blows, he gave the spectators to understand that his strength was redoubled. Yet his enemy was not a jot astonished, but like a wise and hardy Champion, he defended himselfe, and assailed his enemy. The Queene Pintiquinestra

quinesira used her utmost to gain the Victory, her sword was so good, that she gave never a blow to *Almirax* that did not cut to the quick. Wherefore he was so angred, that he struck her such a blow, that she was forced to step backwards, but she soon revenged her self, for she struck him so right between the Helmet and the shoulders, that his soul presently departed, and left his body dead in the place. When she had done thus, she retired under the shadow of a tree, to see what would happen to the King of the Giant Island, and the Knight of the true Cross, who were then striving to throw one another down. *Gradaflea* was very joyfull to see the great prowess of the Knight of the true Cross, whom she loved with all her soul. One thing troubled her, which was to think that the death of the one or the other would be grievous to her, the one being her Father, and the other her Lover. The blood which the King of the Giant Island did continually lose from his wounds, did make him very feeble, as it was well known by all the spectators. Not long after, the King of the Giant Island thinking to ward a blow, retreated somewhat back-wards, and in the going, he fell down in such manner, that every one supposed him to be dead: wherefore the Knight of the true Cross went forwards, and in all diligence set his foot on his neck, and endeavoured to break the buckles of his Armour, whereby he might cut off his head. But he heard a voice crying continually, Ah, ah, *Lisuart*, *Lisuart*! at this cry he looked about and saw the fair *Gradaflea*, who being come to him, cast her self at his feet, and with tears in her eyes, said thus; Alas Knight, if you are now so pittifull of me, as I was of you when I delivered you out of Prison, save the life of him that begat me, and this is the boon which I desire of you as you promised me, otherwise let us both die by your hands. The Knight of the true Cross knew her very well, wherefore leaving the King who was under him, he went to take up *Gradaflea* who was on her knees, and in taking her under the Arme, he said: By my faith Damsell, the Obligation wherein I am indebted un-

to you is so great, and the power which you have over me is so much, that the least messenger you could have sent had been more then sufficient. One thing I entreat of you, that is, that you and he go along with me, and I assure you that you shall have as good entertainment as I can possible. There was then come to them the Emperour of *Constantinople*, and *Trebisond*, *Amadis*, *Pintiquinesra*, and many other great Personages, to hear the discourse between the Knight of the true Cross and the Damsell. to whom he said, that through her means alone he was then alive. For said he, it was she and none other that delivered me out of the hands of cursed *Melia*. For which cause there was none in the Company that did not respect her and her Father, whose Horse was brought; then they all mounting, did ride to the Tent of *Amadis* where they alighted. But they had hardly put their feet to the ground when *Alquesa* arrived, who addressing her selfe to the Emperour of *Constantinople*, entreated him kindly on the behalfe of *Oriana*, to bring *Lisuart* and the King of the Giant Island to the City, for she would have Mrs. *Elizabeth* to look to their wounds, and she likewise desired to see *Gradaflea*, and Queene *Pintiquinesra*, which all the Lords present, consented to. Wherefore they accompanied her unto the City, where they were royally welcomed. And all the Kings wounds were dangerous; yet Mrs. *Elizabeth* lookt to them so well, that he began to be well in few dayes after.

CHAP. XXVI.

How the Pagan Princes, after they had beene so illy handled, sent to the Christian Princes to demand truce, who refused them, and of which happened.

HHe Pagans Army was much troubled, seeing *Alexander* of *Liquie* dead, and the King of the Giant Island out of their power, wherefore knowing that there was no remedy, they entered into Counsell. Where it was concluded to send to the Christians to aske truce for fifteen dayes, wherein they might make the deceased Kings Funerall, and send their bodies into *Asia* to be buried. Wherefore they dispatched Embassadors for that purpose, who came to *Amadis*, who having known the reason of their embassage, enformed the other Princes thereof, who would not say any thing untill he had declared his judgement: wherefore being forced thereunto, he said thus; It is very certain sir, that this wicked people are come into this Country, more to offend true Religion, and the faith of *Jesus Christ*, then the Country of *Thrace* and *Constantinople*; wherefore I think that we should not hearken to them in any such request, and that rather we go to find them out and fight them, and drive them to the furthest parts of *Tartaria*: And if it be objected that they are great in number, I say that they are most of them weak in body, and much disheartned; and which is more, we fight for the faith of *Jesus Christ*, in whose power are all Victories; and therefore we shall be sure to vanquish them. This opinion was approved of by all: Wherefore the Emperour of *Trebisond* gave this answer; Sirs Ambassadors, we will have no truce with you; but if you do not depart before to morrow, we will drive you out; and thus you must enform those who sent you. This news pleased them not, and it did lesse please the Princes

Princes of the Army, for they had in the former assaults lost the chief of their Souldiers, and the rest were much discouraged. Wherefore the Captaines of the Army resolved to try their fortunes once againe, before they should be more diminished, and therefore they gave order to the Souldiers to be ready by Sun rising to go fight their enemies. But they were not so secret, but the Emperour of *Constantinople* heard thereof by his Spies, and therefore told the other Princes thereof that they might be ready. In the mean time those that had been wounded were recovered, and their forces were ordered in this manner. The Emperour of *Constantinople* had the guard of the Town, accompanied with *Quedragant*, King *Arban* of *Normales*, *Angror*, and *Estrevaux*, *Bruner* son to the Giant *Balan*, and *Gasquiles* King of *Suesse*, with a number of footmen. And as for the rest of the Army, they mustred together in one squadron, except the King *Don Fiorestan*, and the Emperour of *Rome*, who had thirty thousand Horsemen, and sixty thousand Footmen, to go on the Enemies Baggage, and to put them in disorder if they could. And as for the Sea, the King *Norrandell*, the Earls, *Frاندilo* and *Plastre*, followed by the Duke of *Ortilensa* with their Furniture, who found the means to surprize the Kings of *Bugie* and *Giliff*, who were come into *Thrace* to hinder the Christians Army from going further, but it fell out far otherwise as you shall hear.

T

CHAP.

Of the cruell Battaile that was between the Christians and Pagans, as well by Sea, as by Land, and of that which happened.

Ye have (not long since) heard how the Christians ordered their affaires: but the Turks and other Lords of the Levant were not in the meane time idle: but by the advice of the Souldan of *Persia*, they counsell'd that about midnight their souldiers should set forwards secretly. Wherefore they diligently provided for all things necessary. And the King of *Jerusalem* followed by five other Kings, and *Caliss* with a hundred thousand fighting men had the charge of scaling the wall. So they likewise sent to their Sea Army, and gave order to them, that so soone as they should see a Signall of fire, they should assaile the Christians fleet, but if the worst should happen on their part, they should remaine on the Coast of *Thrace*, whereby they might save their men. But they did not give the onset untill the day break. But if they had they would have found the Christians ready. In the meane time *Yrguion* son to *Gandelin*, (whom *Perion* of *Gaule* had brought from great Britaine to serve him as an Esquire) presented him before *Amadis*: and being armed at all points, said to him. Sir, I am son to *Gandelin* your ancient servant. I humbly intreat you to give me honour of Chivalrie: seeing that it is impossible (as I think) that at a better time I can enter into armes being the day of the Conflict. *Amadis* had never before seen him, nevertheless, when he knew who he was, he welcommed him for h's fathers sake. And sent for his father, and in his presence gave him the order in so reasonable a time, that he had hardly remounted on horseback when the Enemies marched a great pace towards them.

them. And at their first meeting their Lances breaking in peeces on their armour made such a noise, and the continuall flames of fire as was a pitifull thing to behold, and more especially to heare the complaints of those that were wounded, some on their heads, and on their armes, some on their bodies, as it was their ill fortunes. *Amadis*, *Esplanadian*, *Perion*, and *Lisuart* threw foure Kings dead to the ground at the first onset, and entring into the battaile, being followed by many good Knights, performed marvels. And there was killed at the first onset on both sides more then thirtie thousand persons. There the Knights of the Sphere, and of the true Crosse triumphed: for before they laid hands on their Swords, they disarmed fifteen Pagans, of the bravest of the Army. The two Queenes *Celafes* and *Pintiquinestra* did as well behave themselves, flashing, and throwing to ground all those that they meet in their way: when *Amadis* saw five Giants amongst others, whom King *Griffant* had caused to come from his Countrie, for the safety of his person, but they did him but little service as you have heard. These five Devils gave never a blow but death followed: at which *Amadis* being angered, he went with *Galaor*, *Florestan*, *Argamont*, and *Arda-dile Canile*: who having all recovered new Lances, ran upon the Giants, and broke their Lances in them, without moving them in their saddles. The slaughter was great on both sides: for *Amadis* being followed by ten or twelve thousand french horse men, was charged by the Souldans of *Babylon* and *Alape* who had more then thirtie thousand Turks and Tartarians. And as *Amadis* followed on in all diligence, an old man having a white beard down to his girdle, said him, and said roughly to him, King *Amadis* leave this Chase, and goe aid thy Children, if thou wilt not loose them, seeing they are well nigh defeated. He had hardly pronounced these words, when he vanished, wherefore *Amadis* being abashed, cast his eyes on all sides, and saw *Gandelin* who carried his Ensigne so torne, that the greatest part was hardly sufficient to cover his head:

and after him was *Yrguian* his son, doing such deeds of Armes, that he this day got as much honour as any new Knight within ten yeares time had done. So *Amadis* drew neer to them to know newes of what he sought; but *Yrguian* taking him, and shewing him the Knight of the Sphere, and *Lisuart* said to him, Sir, let us goe and aid them which you see in such dangers. Follow me then answered he; And spurring of his horse, making his passage with his Sword, he met *Galam*, the King *Cildadon*, *Quidragant* son of *Quedragant*, *Talanque*, *Garinter*, and many other Knights, to whom he said in passing by, Lords, for Gods sake let us aid *Perion*, and *Lisuart* who are beset. Saying so, he went forwards, and for all the Pagans resistance, he joyned with them: neverthelesse before they arived there, *Lisuart* and *Perions* horses were slaine under them, and the Queens *Calisea* and *Pistiquinesira* were thrown downe and brought to great extremity. Neverthelesse they had found the meanes to help themselves, and they foure fought on foot so valiantly, that neither Turke nor Arabian dare approach neere them, without the help of ten Giants, who came to enclose them: with whom they had so much to doe, that at the time that *Amadis* arived they were well nigh spent, who seeing his Children in such danger, he was so enraged, that laying aside all feare of death, he entred Pell-Mell amongst their Giants, so that foure of them were slaine at that houre. And in the conclusion, he and his had the worst, by reason of the arivall of the Souldan of *Perse*, who was well accompanied, and began to have the better; had it not been for the arivall of the Kings *Cildadon*, *Brunco*, *Gatuerte*, *Brian*, *Manely*, *Lisuart*, *Perostan*, *Languines*, *Abies*, *Talanque*, *Agries* and many others, who came to their aid: who being arived, the Pagans retreated, and so the two Queens, *Lisuart* and *Perion* were remounted, not without great losse on both sides. And these two Armies did fight so valiantly, that had it not been for the night which separated them, there had not one escaped. In the meane time the King of *Jerusalem* with

with

with his troope, used all diligence to take the City: and after he had prepared all things in diligence, he went with fiftie thousand chosen Souldiers to fire the Gates: but bravely repulled, by a Sally which was made by *Gasquilon* King of *Suessè*, *Brunco*, the son of *Balan*, *Angriole L'Estrevaux*, *Sarquiles*, and a great number of Knights, and others who behaved themselves so well, that the King was taken Prisoner, more then six thousand Palestines defeated, ten Elephants overthrowne, and seven or eight thousand Ladders broken in peeces. Nevertheless a good part of the wall was at last thrown down by force of their Rams, and other Engines. When the Pagans ran directly to the Bulwarke, and there they fought hand to hand, putting those within well nigh out of breath, if the Emperor had not then arived, but at his arivall he did performe such deeds of Armes, that he stopped his enemies, and made them somewhat retire. You have now heard what was done on the Land, now it remaineth to tell you what was done at Sea. *Norandell* and the Earle *Frانداله*, coming neere to the Kings of *Bugie*, of *Giloffe* gave signe of Battell to their souldiers: and they had so faire a winde, that at their arivall they did much hurt to the Turks by their Lances of fire, and Granadoes, wherewith fiftie Vessells were spoiled presently. And the Dukes of *Ortilens* and *Alisic* did make it evidently appeare, with what affection they served their Master. And the Apes that were in the great Ship that brought *Amadis* and those of the firme Island. This nimble beast as is well knowne, who were about two thousand in number, did get a rop of the Ship, and did continually shoot arrowes in such great abundance that it was as thick as haile, and they were so nimble that none could come at them to offend them. But the conclusion of this fierce battell was thus, that in lesse then an houres space there was more then five hundred Vessells of the Enemies suncke, but this was not done without the losse of many good Christians. During these passages, the Emperour of *Rome*, and the King of *Sardine*, *Don Florestan*, who

who were appointed to set upon the Enemies baggage, seeing them somewhat disheartned, set upon them, and put them in such disorder, that that was one cause why the enemies lost the battell. Who finding themselves so hotly charged both before and behinde, that some fled, and others thought to rally againe which was impossible: for the Queenes *Pintiquinestra* and *Calafea* with their women gave them so much to doe, that the Emperor of *Trebisind*, *Dardarie* King of *Breigne* and many others that followed them, said, that they never saw better warriors. And as they traversed through the Ranks, they found out *Amadis*, *Eplandian*, *Perion*, *Lisouit*, and most part of the Knights of great Britaine and *Gaule*, amongst a Squadron of *Persians*, who were routed and fled with their Souldans, *Taborlanes*, *Califs* and others both foot and horse. But there was a great slaughter, in such manner, that the blood covered the fields, just like the overflowing of a River in the time of a flood, and had it not been for the obscure night, there had not been one of the Enemies saved. Then *Amadis* commanded to sound the retreat, hoping the next day to pursue their good fortune. Those who gave the assault to the Towne had won it, had it not been that one reported to them, that the battell was lost, wherefore (being seized with cold feare) they retired in bad order. Which the Emperor knowing, he chated them, so that he did slay ten thousand of them, then being constrained to leave the Chase by reason of the dark, they entred into the City, resolving to pursue their enterprize so soon as day should appear. But it was not the determination of those that fled, for they resolved to take shipping so soon as they could, and depart. And this determination they soon put in execution. And by good chance they found their ships, whereinto they entred, not standing upon Complements who should first enter, so that six thousand of them were drown'd for haste, and six thousand more remained on the Land, having no shipping. So the Moone shining bright and cleer, they had the better meanes to weigh anchors, and depart.

Which

Which *Frاندalo* understanding, he presently pursued, but the winde was faire for those that fled, and contrary to those that pursued. Neverthelesse they were overtooke by the swiftest Vessells, and forced to fight with as much vigor as they could to save their lives. Thus you may see what happened to this great Army of Pagans. Whereby was fulfilled the writing which the Knight of the Sphere found written in the Roule of gilt Copper, at the fountaine, where *Alquesa* caused him to stay, as you have heard in the fift chapter.

CHAP. XXVIII.

How the Christian Princes who came to the aid of the Emperor of Constantinople purposed to return into their Countries, and of the Enterprize which some Knights undertooke to conduct the Queen Mabila.



Hese Captaines of the Sea being returned from the pursuit of their Enemies, and the sick being healed who had been wounded, during the Seige of *Constantinople*, every one determined to depart to his owne Countie, of which they informed the Emperor. Who after a thousand good thanks, told them that for his part he would enter unto the solitary life which he had lead, before the Enchantment of his son and daughter. *Urganda* the unknown was the cause of this sudden departure, for she told the King *Grafander* that some of his Subjects were about to choose a new King, thinking that he was dead, or quite lost. For which cause he purposed to depart the next morning. Of which the Knight of the true Crosse, *Perion* and others being advertized, they assured them that they would bear them companie to their embarquement. And well, what doe you think of us?

said

said the Queens *Calasea* and *Pintiquinestra*, doe you think that we will stay behinde? we will (if it please) you goe as well to accompany you as to recreate our selves. So the next morning they all met, to the number of fifty at *Grasandors* lodging, who taking his leave (with the Queene his wite) of the Queen *Oriana*, the other Princesses, Ladies, and Damicells, they set forwards, and the three Emperors *Amadis* and *Esplindian* accompanied them halfe a mile out of the Towne, where leaving them to the protection of God, they returned and left to conduct them further: the two Queens, the Knights of the true Croisse, and of the Sphere, the King *Don Galaor*, *Florestan*, *Agnes*, and the King *Don Bruneo*, King *Don Brian*, and King *Grasandor*, King *Gasquilin*, and King *Cildidan*, King *Garinter* of *Dace*, and the King of *Hungarie*, King *Talanque*, and the King of *Jugarte* *Garinter*, King *Arban* of *Normales*, and King *Dardanie* of *Breigne*, *Don Quedragant* Lord of *Sansuegue*, *Galanus* Lord of the Isle of *Mongaze*, and the Earl of *Alastre*, *Alin*, son to the Duke of *Ortilense*, *Manly* the Sage, and *Amber* of *Gandell*, *Angriole* *L'Escrevoux*, and *Sarquiles* his Couzen, Prince *Brandalie*, and the Marquis *Saluder*, the valiant Admirall *Frandslo*, and King *Nrandell*, *Bravor*, son to the Giant *Balan*, *Garante du Xallo* *Cranitif*, the Giant *Argamont*, and the son of his son *Ardadile* *Canils*, *Quedragant* and *Abies* of *Ireland*, as also *Vaidides*, *Languinet*, *Florestan*, and *Parmenir* his brother, *Galanus* and *Perion* sons of *Galaor*, *Dragonis*, *Salonir*, and the Earle *Gandaline*, with *Yeguiar* his son, *Telus* the Fleming, and *Guileiris* couzen to *Frandslo*, with Giants a neer kinsman to the good King *Lisvan* deceased. These fifty, as well Kings as valiant Knights, with the two Queens, *Pintiquinestra* and *Calasea*, accompanied *Grasandor* and *Mabila* to the Sea-Shore: and carrying with each of them a Squire, who carried their Lance and Helmet, they passed over this day with flying the Heron, remitting their hunting untill the morrow: when they came into a very faire plaine, wherein did run a river, whereon was a bridge, and on the other

side

side there was a Castle, where they saw two Knights armed with black armour, who took two Lances, and marching to the foot of the bridge, they sent a Damfell before them, to defend the passage to passengers. This woman made no delay in performing what she was commanded, for she met the Knights, and inquired who was the chief amongst them. Damfell answered the King *Don Galaor*, we are all alike, and Companions. Well then said she, heare the message that I have brought to you. They defend said she (pointing to the Knights of the Fortresse) the passage over this bridge, which they have enterprized to keep a whole yeare, by the Commandement of those whom they love, without suffering any Knight to passe by, if it be not on these conditions. None that is alone shall passe by without justing with one of them. And if they be two, they shall each deal with one, who if they be cast from their horses, and ours remaine on horseback, in this case they shall lose their shields and horses: but if the ill fortune falls on their part, they shall have the like losse, and may no more enterprize to guard this bridge. But if it happen that both the assaylants, and the Defendants are thrown down at the first encounter, they may all foure come to the Combate of the Sword, under the same condition of the Lance. And if none are unhorsed, then they are to assaile one another untill they be and not to fight with the Sword. Thus I have told you the Covenants, which you are to performe if you will passe any further: which they pray you not to take ill at their hands. Truly said *Galaor*, the Knights have reason to obey the Commands of their Ladies: nevertheless, it displeaseth me that they have undertaken such an enterprize. Wherefore goe tell them that we will passe over the bridge, according to the agreement which they have sent us: So the Damfell departed to the two Knights. They had come two by two: wherefore they agreed together, that they would in the like manner goe to the Just, in such manner, that *Belleris* Nephew to the Admirall *Frandslo* and *Siontes* were the first, who came

V

against

against the Knights, and their encounters were such, that *Belleris* and *Siontes* broke their staves, but the Knights of the bridge disarmed them, and threw them on the ground. Then there came foure Squires, who seized on their horses and Shields. So they stood still to see what would happen to *Brunette*, and *Telus* the Flemming, who were as illy handled as the others. Then *Gandalin* and *Yrguian* his son set forwards, but their horses was likewise seized on by the Squires: wherefore *Dragonis* and *Balonir* hoped to revenge them; and therefore they met the Knights of the bridge so rightly, that their Lances flew into shivers, but they were unhorsed aswell as the rest, losing their shields and horses. Then *Perion* of *Sobradise* and *Galuanes* advanced against the black Knights, who broke their Lances but were thrown to the ground, and their horses seized on by the Squires: Then *Florestan* and *Parmenir* his brother went forwards, who met those of the bridge so bravely, that they all foure broke their Lances: and therefore no Lances were brought them, when they recharged one another in such manner, that *Florestan* and *Parmenir* were dismounted, and the Spectators did think their necks had been broken. By my faith said *Queen Mabila*, I think I shall be a Prophetess, and that they will dismount you all: Then *Vaillides* and *Languines* came to the Iust, who at the first encounter were dismounted: at which the Knights of Sphere, and the True Crosse were vexed. But there came presently *Quedragant* and *Abies* of *Ireland* who broke their Lances, and met with their bodies in such manner, that *Abies* and *Quedragant* fell on the ground. Then *Argamont* and *Ardadile Canile* set forwards, whom the two black Knights met with two of the strongest Lances, and moved the Giants in such manner, that they lost their stirrups and broke their Lances in more then twentie peeces, in such manner, that against their wills they had the like fortunes as their fellowes, and the Squires tooke their horses and shields, which they carried where the others were. The black Knights in the meane time took new Lances, attending

attending for *Draror* son to the Giant *Balin*, and *Gatnate du Val Granitif* against whom they broke, nevertheless their meeting was such, that *Braror* and *Gatnate* had no better fortune then their fellowes. Wherefore the King *Norandell*, and valiant *Frاندalo* presented themselves, and their fortune was so good that they all foure broke their Lances, which the Squires seeing, they ran hastily and brought them new Lances, wherewith they met with such puissance, that *Norandell* and *Frاندalo* did againe break their Lances. But they that guarded the bridge did much better: for their Lances remaining whole they threw down the others most rudely on the grasse. Then the Prince of *Brandie*, and Marquis *Salader* advanced, who at the first encounter were dismounted, the others Lances remaining whole. So soone after *Augriole L'Estrevaux*, and *Sarquiles* advanced in such manner, that they remained on horseback for three Careers: Nevertheless in conclusion, they left their horses and armes as a gage: and *Manly* with *Ambor* of *Gandell* came to the Ioust; these two made no great resistance, no more then the Earle of *Alastre*, and *Alarin*, whose horses and shields were carried to the others. Wherefore *Quedragant* and *Galuanes* came with such fierceness to the black Knights that their foure Lances flew into the aire, and nevertheless *Galuanes* and *Quedragant* were throwne to the ground: but soon after came *Dardanie* King of *Breigne*, and *Arban* of *Normales*, who were no better handled then the rest. Then came the two Queens, *Calasea* and *Pintiquinestea*, who broke their Lances on the two Knights: yet nevertheless they were forced to measure their lengths on the ground. What shall I say further? *Garinter* and *Talanque* had the like fortune, as also, *Garimer*, King of *Hungarie*, *Gasquillon*, and Kings *Cildadan*, *Brian*, and *Grasindor*, then came *Agnes*, and *Don Bruno*, being much vexed at such strange an adventure, and they ran with such choller, that they broke each of them three staves, but at the fourth course they were dismounted, and their horses and shields seized on by the Squires.

Squires. Then *Galaor*, and *Florestan* the good Juster advanced, and they did so well that seven Lances were broken before any of them could be unhorsed, but at the seventh course they all met with such force, that the two black Knights had been forced to fall had not they held by their horses necks, but *Galaor* and his Companion were thrown down. Wherefore *Mabila* being abashed, was desirous that *Perion* and *Lisuart* should not just, for said she, you two on horseback may soone goe and fetch Coaches for them that are on foot. Nay, God forbid? I will either lose my own horse, or win another, and so said the Knight of the Sphere. So they gave spurs to their horses, and met together without breaking their Lances with such force, that they were all foure thrown to the ground, but they soon arose and laying their hands on their Swords, there began a most cruell fight, so that fire came from their harnesses, and blood from their bodies in such manner, that the green grasse changed colour, and they charged one another so long, that at length they had no armour wherewithall to defend themselves: Wherefore they came to handie gripes, hoping by that meanes either to end their Combate or their lives: But there happened a dark cloud which wrapped them up in such manner, that they could not be seen. And soon after the Sun did shine, and the four Combatants were seen without Helmets, the two sons imbracing the two Fathers, *Amadis* and *Esplandian*, and between them old *Alquif*, who said to them, My Lords, it was not reasonable that any of you foure should have the honor of this Combate, for you are all of one flesh. Then *Amadis* remembred that this was he that appeared to him on the day of Battell, when he rescued his two Children. And *Perion* knew him having delivered him from the Giant in the Island that *Alquifa* had conducted him to. So soon as *Perion* and *Lisuart* had seen the fault they had committed to their fathers, they put their knees to the ground, and humbly intreated them to pardon them. Then *Queen Mabila*, and the other vanquisht Knights came

came together (who seeing so cruell a Conflict converted into so much pleasure) were very glad, and said to them: In good faith sirs you have done us much wrong, in beating us, and taking away our horses and armes both, you may say what you please, said *Amadis*, but one thing I must confess, that we have been the strongest witnesses, the blows that we have on our shoulders. At these words they all laughed, and taking their way to the Fortresse, they had hardly entred when *Urganda* the unknown, and Mr *Elizabeth* came, whom she had brought to look to their wounds. Then the four Knights were disarmed, and laid in rich beds, where their wounds were carefully looked to: and *Amadis* told them that they had done this unknown to any, but one Esquire who furnished them with Armour, and said he we did ride all night to stop your passage, where I was better beaten then ever I was in my life.

CHAP. XXIX.

How Amadis, Esplandian, Perion, and Lisuart returned to Constantinople leaving Queen Mabila, in the Company of the other Knights, who conducted her.



He second day after that *Amadis* and *Esplandian* had been absent, many Knights left *Constantinople* to goe in search of them, but they soone found them, wherefore by the advice of all they were carried to *Constantinople*, to put *Orizna* and *Leonorina* out of paine. And the Emperor of *Trebisond* purposed to abide there untill they were well, that he might carrie with him the Knights of the Sphere, and of the true Crosse. The old *Alquif* was in the meane time much honored, and the In-

Janus Gradaflea took great pleasure to keep the Knight of the true Crosse company, for she loved him extremely. In such manner, that a young man of honor (belonging to the Emperor of *Trebisond*, and son to the Duke of *Alafome*) perceived it, and conceived that there was mutuall love between them, but in that he was deceived: nevertheless this fantasie of his turned to great consequence, as you shall hereafter hear. But to returne to our purpose, the Emperor of *Trebisond* (knowing that the wounded Knights would not be healed so soone as he expected) purposed to send his traine before with the Duke of *Ortlenja*, to advertise the Empresse with the cause of his stay. The Duke being dispatched presently set saile with his Fleet, and had so good a winde, that in a few dayes he arived at *Trebisond*, where he was welcomed by the Empress, the two *Infantes Onolorea*, *Gricilerea* and others. Now they had already known all that had hapned during this war, aswel in *Constantinople* as to the Knight of the true Crosse, and all by the meanes of *Alquesa*, who had been sent with two Letters from *Lisuart* and *Perion* to their Ladies, and therefore when the Duke arived the two Princeesses (thinking that their Father and friends were returned) did not know with what countenance to carrie themselves: for they had sent *Alquesa* back againe, to bid the two Knights not faile to come with the Emperor. Yet they were deceived, and knowing of the Duke the cause of their fathers stay, they lived in hopes. It hapned that one day *Bridelnea* daughter to the Duke of *Alafome* called her brother (he who had taken notice of the love of *Gradaflea* to *Lisuart*) and as *Bridelnea* discoursed to him about the Ladies of *Constantinople*, he hapned to say that to his knowledge, he had not seen one so faire as she who had delivered *Lisuart* from the hands of *Melea*. But beleeve me, said he, the good she did him is greatly recompensed, for I beleeve they enjoy one another as much as any two Lovers. And how doe you know it said *Bridelnea*? Then he told her all that he knew, and more. And as he was in this discourse, *Onolorea* chanced

chanced to come who heard more then she should. Wherefore she presently entred into her chamber, and having recourse unto her teares, she grieved so much that her heart was ready to leave her body. *Gricilerea* had not heard any of this, but entring into her sisters chamber, and seeing her in such a condition, she asked her what she ailed. Shee was not able in a good while to answer her, but at length she recited to her all which she had heard of *Bridelneas* brother, and said she, I will repay him in his own coyne if I can possible. And although *Gricilerea* took great paines to comfort her, yet she would not hearken to her: but she resolved to write a Letter to him. And therefore taking pen and paper, she put her determination in execution. Then calling an Esquire son to her Nurse (in whom she confided) she said secretly to him: My friend, you must doe me a Message. The Squire who desired nothing more then to serve her, answered her, that he was readie to obey her. You must (said she) goe to *Constantinople* to finde one, who is called the Knight of the true Crosse: deliver this Letter to him as from me, and by all meanes look on his Countenance when he reads it, and after he hath read it. The Squire was ready to obey this Command, so that very day he embarqued, setting saile for *Thrace*.

CHAP. XXX.

How Lifvart having received the Letter of the Infanta Onolorea, departed secretly from Constantinople, and of the return of the Christian Princes into their Countries.



He fiftie Knights being returned to Constantinople, and the wounded being healed by the great care of Mr Ezzabeb: Old *Alquis* being desirous to returne unto his Ile of *Aies*, tooke his leave of the Company, telling them that he would see them another time more conveniently. My great friend answered *Amadis*, I am much beholding to you for the great aid you have given me, being in so great danger: therefore I pray you let me see you in my Countrie, where I will doe you all the honor that I can. *Alquis* departed that same day. Soone after a Page came secretly to tell the Knight of the true Crosse (who was then with *Amadis*) that a Squire would speak with him. *Lifvart* followed the Page where the other staid, who kissing a Letter presented it to him, saying: Madam, *Onolorea* sent me to you, see what she sayes, *Lifvart* said to him: My friend, I pray stay till I have read my Ladies Letter, and written an answer. Then going into his chamber he opened this Letter, where he found that which followes.

Seeing that your disloyaltie, Knight (the most ungratefull living) is so apparent, that no excuse can cover the fault of your heart, I command you on your life, that you come not into my sight, nor that I hear not from you. For you doe not well to dissemble with me,
(who

(who am of so high birth) under the colour of Service. I much wonder how you were so bold to tell me that which you did before your departure, and do much more wonder that you did send so to me, as you gave in charge last of all to Alquefa. Henceforwards I pray deceive simple wenches, and not such Ladies as I am.

Onolorea.

He had no sooner read the Contents of this Letter, when he swooned, but he soon recovered his senses, and fell to cursing his ill fortune, and he would oftentimes have killed himselfe with his dagger, had not the thoughts of the losse of his soule hindred him. But he resolved to depart that night, where his Lady nor no other should ever hear of him. Then wiping his eyes, he caused *Onolorea's* Squire to be called, and said to him: friend, I would have thee take a horse, and carry it this night without the City, at the Eagle gate, and stay for me there, that I may put in execution the desire of your Mistresse. And so soon as he had said so, he returned to the Emperors Lodgings, where he found the Knight of the Sphere, *Florestan* and his other Companions, discoursing about their departure. At night he told the Knight of the Sphere that that evening he must depart about an affaire newly happened. And soon after he went to an old Knights house, whom he intreated to lend him some Armes. The Knight gave him his sons, wherewith he armed himselfe, and soon after secretly departed, and went to the place where the Squire staid with his horse, whereon he mounted: then he said to him, My friend, returne to thy Mistresse, and tell her that I have fulfilled her commands, and I charge thee on thy life let none but her self know hereof. Then leaving him to the protection of God, he spurred his horse, and did ride directly towards the Forrest, into the thicket, whereto he entred, that he might not be found by any that should seek him: Then
X
finding

finding himselfe alone in so solitarie a place, he wept so much that the fore part of his armour was covered with water. Thus he passed away the night. Here we will let him goe and returne to those of *Constantinople*, as to *Perion* who did not much mistrust any thing untill the next day at Supper, when *Amadis* asked for him, but he could not heare of him. This report was so common through the Palace, that the most part of them did resolve to goe in search of him, if he did not suddenly returne. But *Urganda* told them that this would be in vain. This news was no wayes pleasing to his friends, and *Perion* resolved after he had once visited *Gricilerea*, never to leave searching untill he had found him. But *Gradasilea* did as much grieve hereat as any of them, who did resolve not to depart from the Emperesse untill he should return, but to stay with her father, and the King of *Jerusalem* who were both Prisoners. The day being come for the departure of all these Kings and Princes, they did all of them take their leaves of the old and new Emperors, and the other Princes of *Thrace*, and the Emperor of *Trebisond* took shipping, in the company of the Knight of the Sphere, *Florestan* and *Parmenir* his brother, *Galuanes* and *Abies* of *Ireland*, *Vaillides* *Quedragant* and *Languines*, who were all contented to goe in this voyage, hoping after one moneths stay to finde *Lisvart*, or never leave searching through the utmost parts of the whole world.

CHAP. XXXI.

How Lisvart travelling as fortune guided him, entred into a Barque, and of the Combate he had with some Pirates who carried Alquefa prisoner.

YOU have formerly heard the manner, and the occasion why the Knight of the true Crosse was departed from *Constantinople*, who travelled all that night, and untill the next evening without refreshing himselfe, but then he turned his horse to feed, and he himselfe fell into so melancholy a humour, that he purposed to leave all and turne Hermite for the rest of his life; but he heard a voice which cried aloud, *Lisvart*, follow Chivalrie to which thou art called by nature, otherwise thou wilt much displease God. When he heard himselfe named he looked about, and through the brightnesse of the Moon, he perceived a woman on the top of a tree, who said to him, Unfortunate Knight, have a care that you put not your thoughts in execution, for God hath not given you these abilities to employ them in idleness. *Lisvart* was affrighted with this vision, nevertheless he purposed to give credit thereunto, and therefore so soone as it was day, he took his sheild, and mounting on his horse travelled through the Forest, and marching forwards a Knight met him, who seeing *Lisvart* would follow him to see if he were foolish or mad; but he had not long accompanied him, before he heard him give a great sigh crying, Alas Love, how ill hast thou known my Loyaltie! at this word the other Knight advanced, and said to him, Sir Knight I think you are in love. *Lisvart* casted his eyes on him (who had not till then perceived him) and without answering him he would have departed: but the other stopped him, and took hold of his bridle, saying to him:

finding himselfe alone in so solitarie a place, he wept so much that the fore part of his armour was covered with water. Thus he passed away the night. Here we will let him goe and returne to those of *Constantinople*, as to *Perion* who did not much mistrust any thing untill the next day at Supper, when *Amadis* asked for him, but he could not heare of him. This report was so common through the Palace, that the most part of them did resolve to goe in search of him, if he did not suddenly returne. But *Urganda* told them that this would be in vain. This news was no wayes pleasing to his friends, and *Perion* resolved after he had once visited *Gricilerea*, never to leave searching untill he had found him. But *Gradafilea* did as much grieve hereat as any of them, who did resolve not to depart from the Empreſſe untill he should return, but to stay with her father, and the King of *Jerusalem* who were both Prisoners. The day being come for the departure of all these Kings and Princes, they did all of them take their leaves of the old and new Emperors, and the other Princes of *Thrace*, and the Emperor of *Trebisond* took shipping, in the company of the Knight of the Sphere, *Florestan* and *Parmenir* his brother, *Galuanes* and *Abies* of *Ireland*, *Vaillides* *Quedragant* and *Languines*, who were all contented to goe in this voyage, hoping after one moneths stay to finde *Lisvart*, or never leave searching through the utmost parts of the whole world.

CHAP. XXXI.

How Lisvart travelling as fortune guided him, entred into a Barque, and of the Combate he had with some Pirates who carried Alqueſa prisoner.

YOU have formerly heard the manner, and the occasion why the Knight of the true Crosse was departed from *Constantinople*, who travelled all that night, and untill the next evening without refreshing himselfe, but then he turned his horse to feed, and he himselfe fell into so melancholy a humour, that he purposed to leave all and turne Hermite for the rest of his life; but he heard a voice which cried aloud, *Lisvart*, follow Chivalrie to which thou art called by nature, otherwise thou wilt much displease God. When he heard himselfe named he looked about, and through the brightnesse of the Moon, he perceived a woman on the top of a tree, who said to him, Unfortunate Knight, have a care that you put not your thoughts in execution, for God hath not given you these abilities to employ them in idleness. *Lisvart* was affrighted with this vision, nevertheless he purposed to give credit thereunto, and therefore so soone as it was day, he took his sheild, and mounting on his horse travelled through the Forest, and marching forwards a Knight met him, who seeing *Lisvart* would follow him to see if he were foolish or mad; but he had not long accompanied him, before he heard him give a great sigh crying, Alas Love, how ill hast thou known my Loyaltie! at this word the other Knight advanced, and said to him, Sir Knight I think you are in love. *Lisvart* casted his eyes on him (who had not till then perceived him) and without answering him he would have departed: but the other stopped him, and took hold of his bridle, saying to him:

By God sir Knight you shall stay, will you or not? and I will know the cause of your foolishnesse. How said *Lisuart*? will you force me to a thing that doth not please me? Yes said the other, for I never thought to finde a man so foolish as to be subject to a Sex so false, and malicious as women are. I wonder said *Lisuart*, you have no reason to blame them, the least whereof you are not worthy to serve. In good faith said the Knight, you might have been contented to have been a foole without being a Sott, as you are; now *Lisuart* being surprized with Choller suddenly laid hands on his Sword, and gave the Knight so great a blow on the hand, that he cut it off, and said to him: Infamous Rascall, receive the Guerdon which thou deservest for equalling thy selfe to her, who hath no second. And as he thought to strike him againe, the wounded Knight fled as fast as he could, lamenting and crying pitifully. So *Lisuart* chased him not but followed his way. But he had not gone far, before he heard a voice behinde him crying, turne, turne thee. At this cry he looked back round about, and saw two Knights conducting the lame Knight, who said to *Lisuart*: By God you shall now pay for your wickednesse. Then they set on him, but he soone killed one of them, and had killed the other, but that six villaines came forth of the thickest of the wood, but he soone dispatched foure of them, and the other did run away as also did the last Knight, who being provided did kill his fellowes horses before he went, that *Lisuart* might not pursue him, *Lisuart*s owne horse being killed before. Thus *Lisuart* was forced to travaile on foot, untill he came to a vallie (where was a pleasant Fountaine shadowed by many spreading trees) where he staid as well to rest himselfe from travell, as to drinke, he having not drunke since he departed from *Constantinople*. Then there came three Shepherds, who seeing one in armour were afraid: but he called them, and they sitting down by him, they gave him such victualls as they had to eat. Then they left him, for he began to sleep. And as he was asleep, he heard a voyce which called

called *Lisuart*: at this cry he lifted up his head, and saw a young childe neer him, and the child said to him: *Lisuart* doe not despaire, and follow the Counsell that hath been given you this night: when you goe from hence goe towards the right hand, which will lead thee to the top of this Rock, where you shall finde a hermitage, and there you shall be provided with a convenient remedie; therefore arise. The childe, having said thus, left *Lisuart* in great doubt from whence these visions should come, but at last he supposed that it was *Alquis*, or some from him. Therefore he gave credit to these speeches, and went to the top of the Rock, and there in the house he found a black armour, and a writing in a Parchment, the contents whereof follow.

Solitary Knight arme thyself with these armes: then goe along the Sea-side, where you shall finde a barque readie to set saile, enter thereinto, and leave the guiding thereof to Fortune. Remember thyself that it is impossible to hinder the things that God hath determined.

Lisuart having read this Letter disarmed himselfe, and put on those armes, which were as fit for him, as if they had been made for him. Then leaving the Hermitage, he went the way that he was directed, and found the barque whereinto he entred. And by reason that he was alone, he purposed to name himselfe the solitary Knight, a name agreeable to his solitude. So he sailed foure dayes and foure nights, and on the fifth he perceived a great Barque coming strait towards him. In this Vessell was foure Knights armed at all points, and a Damself bound with great chaines. And when these two Vessells joyned, he saw *Alquesa*, whom the foure Knights badly used: who being arived, cryed out to him: Sir Knight in the black armour, yeild your selfe to our mercy, and we will save your life: but they tarried not long before they had a cruell combate, where the Solitary Knight killed two of them in

short time, and the other two were forced to crave mercy, which he would not grant them untill he knew whether the Damsell would agree to it: who would not have him pardon them their lives unless it were upon condition, that they should conduct her whither she should goe. And said she, they have hindred me from doing service to two of the best Knights in the world, and whom if they know you, you may hereafter thanke for the good which I have had by your meanes. Sir said the others to the Solitary Knight, we will doe whatsoever you please to command us, and we will sware to performe it: the solitary Knight knew *Alquifa*, and he knew certainly that she was returned from *Trebisond* to him and *Perion*, and therefore he said to her, I pray you Damsell tell me, who are these so esteemed Knights to whom you are going? sir Knight answered she, they are children to King *Amadis*, and the Emperour *Esplandian*, and for their sakes I humbly pray you, that according to the promise which they haue made you, that they carrie me to *Constantinople*; truly Damsell, my friend said the Solitary, they being the children of two such Princes, as you have told me, I desire greatly to serve them, and as for this voyage to *Constantinople*, I will and command these two Knights under faith that they obey you: having so said, he commended her to the protection of God, and they being entred their Vessells, *Alquifa* bethought her self to aske his name, which he told her being calld the Solitary Knight? At this word the Barques severed, and that wherein *Alquifa* and the two Knights were, sailed straight to Coast: so the Solitary sailed other five dayes without happening of any adventure, and continually thinking on the talke which he had had with *Alquifa*, he thought that this messenger had brought him some pardon, for his immerited offence, but being much grieved, he sailed untill the sixth day, where he arived at the Isle of Serpents.

CHAP. XXXII.

How Lifvart took Port in the Isle of Serpents, where by the treacherie of a Damsell, he entred into a Castle and was imprisoned.



The Solitary Knight sailed six dayes in the Barque, untill one morning he came neere to one of the fairest Isles that ever he had seen. And there the Barque staid of it selfe, then taking of his sheild he landed, and travelled in a path that brought him to a Castle that was environed with water. He had not long travelled before he met with a Damsell, who acted the mad part, tearing her hair and crying most pitifully: wherefore he having pitie of her demanded the cause, which she told him, that a Knight that was in the Castle had abused her, he then desired her to conduct him to the place, and he would use his best abilities to revenge her cause, but she would not returne least she should be worse handled then before: wherefore he went himselfe, and left her to attend his returne, so soone as he came neere to the Castle, he saw an old woman out of one of the windowes, who demanded of him what it was that he sought, which he told her: wherefore she told him that he might enter if he pleased: for the dore was open: wherefore he went to enter, but he had no sooner set his foot on the bridge but he fell down into a Cave or dungeon, where he had like to have been killed with the fall: when he came to himselfe he walked about, and found nothing but bones of men which he did tread on, and himselfe enclosed with strong walls, but at last he perceived an Iron dore, and he soon after espied a little window opened: and the old woman above who said to him: Knight tell me now (seeing you are my prisoner) who you are. Ladie said he, you have done me so ill a turne, that I will never obey you in any service whatsoever. Then by my faith

saith said she, I will make you die the most cruell death that ever any man did. I fear not that said the Solitary for death is common to all. It is true said the old woman, then see what will happen: then she did shut the window, but he could see by reason of the Carbonele which was at the handle of his sword, as you have heard. She being departed, left him in such choller, that he broke open the Iron dore, and thereby entred into another vault where he heard a great hissing, he having gone a little further met a great Serpent, having a head as big as an Oxes, and very large and long eares, then gnashing its teeth, it advanced towards the Solitary, who perceiving the perill he was in drew forth his Sword, and gave the Serpent such a blow that he smote off one of its eares, wherewith the Serpent being enraged ran upon the Knight with open mouth, thinking to devoure him, but there was so much vertue in his sword, that no venomous Creature could approach them that carried it. wherefore the Solitary thrust his sword into the eare of the Serpent and so pearced its braines. The Serpent perceiving it selfe wounded to death, did uncessantly cast forth its scales and teeth with such force, as if the strongest archers in the world had shot arrowes; but the Solitary did avoid all damage and hurt that might happen by them, by standing behind the door that he had opened, and thus the beast continued, untill at length the sword pearced so far its braine, that it fell down dead: wherefore the Solitary Knight fell down on his knees, and gave most devout thanks unto God, and then approached neer unto the beast, and drew forth his sword with both his hands, setting his foot to the head of the beast. Then he broke open a dore, and so went up staires, and in the end he came into the Court of the Castle, where he found some Knights with the old woman, who did suppose him to be dead, but seeing him so neer them, and his sword in his hand, they ran away as fast as they could, and amongst them there was the Damzell that had betrayed him, Wherefore he said to her,

Wicked

Wicked woman thou shalt never betray any more: saying so he pursued them, but he was stayed by some *Halderdiers* who did defend the passage, but he in short time killed some of them, and pursued the rest who fled into a Hall, where he found a great Knight armed at all points, who said to him: Infamous Rascall (you shall repent the time that you entred into this Castle.) Ah wicked fellow said the Solitary Knight art thou he who forcest Damfells? At these words they charged one another, and the Combate lasted so long between them, that in the end he of the Castle had the worst, and lost his life. Which they of the Castle seeing did all submit themselves unto him: then the old woman came who did make great lamentations for the death of the Knight, who was her son: but in the conclusion she threw down the keyes of the Prisons, where her Prisoners were, and two of her servants went downe into the Prisons, and fetched them up who had been Prisoners there for the space of eighteen years, and had not in all that time seen the day light. The Captives beeing come before him (and he having put off his Helmet) they fell down at his feet, and because he did much resemble his Grandfather *Amadis*, two of the Company took for *Amadis*, and said to him: Ah Seigncur *Amadis* the succour and aid of all disconsolate ones, you are arived here in very good time. My friends answered he, you are mistaken, I am not *Amadis*, neither did I ever see him. Sir, said one of them, I doe believe that he is older, but I am confident that you are kin to him. And who are you said the Solitary. I am said he, *Gastiles* Nephew to the Emperor of *Constantinople*, and this other is *Tartarie* his Admirall. The Solitary Knight had formerly heard of them, but it was supposed that they had been dead twentie years before, wherefore he said to them, my friend, I am very joyfull that I have delivered you out of prison, for the sake of the Emperour. And as they were thus discourfing, the old woman came, who having heard them talk of the Emperor, who was the man in the world that she hated most, she made a great complaint, however

Y

said

said she, I will content my selfe, for the good and noble King *Armato* doth now besiege *Constantinople*, and is ready to conquer it. In good faith Madam, answered the Solitary Knight, the Army of the King of whom you speak hath been defeated, and he himselfe is dead, and the rest of his Army is fallen into the hands of this Emperour your great Enemy. Oh ye Gods (said the old woman) what is this that I hear? I will not live after that most puissant King *Armato*: then she took her sons sword, and set it to her breast, and fell thereon, and so fell down dead. At which they all laughed, and that which encreased their laughter, they saw the Damsell (who caused the Solitary Knight to come to the Castle) come forth, and with great force throw her self into the water, where she was soon devoured by Crocodiles, and such other gentle birds, who repaired thither. Then the Solitary demanded of one of them, what was this old womans name, and how she came to take so many Knights, Sir answered he, she was neice to the King *Armato*, and Ladie of this Isle, called the Isle of the Lake of Serpents, and so called for the great number of such beasts who are nourished in this water, and from thence came this great Serpent who lies dead there, who did much damage unto this Country, untill our Lady by the meanes of her Aunt *Melea* found the meanes to enclose the beast, where you found it. And for the ill will she bore to the Emperour, she used all meanes by the help of the Damsell to take all Christian Knights, whereby many were killed by the Serpent. By my head (said the Solitary Knight) I never heard of the like wickedness. Then he asked *Gastiles* if he had been served so? yes truly, said he, and we have continued here above seventeen years in great miserie and calamity, having but little to eat, and that little but bad. Thus he through their perswasions stayed there all that night, when the next morning he told *Gastiles* that he would depart, and desired him (seeing the old woman was so great an Enemy of the Emperour, to let the Emperour have the place as for himselfe, he could not

not tell what to doe with any possession. Then he telling *Gastiles* that his name was the Solitary Knight) departed, and victualling his barque (and taking one of the best horses) he entred thereinto, and the barque began to saile of it self.

CHAP. XXXIII.

How Gastiles and Tartarie embarked to goe to Constantinople, to carry the head of the Serpent.

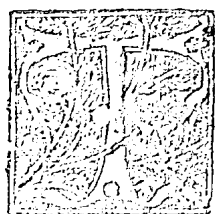


He Solitary Knight being departed, *Gastiles* and *Tartarie* with the help of the Inhabitants of the place drew the Serpent up out of the vault, having provided themselves of a ship, they intreated the others who had been prisoners there to looke to the Island, whilest they went to *Constantinople*, and they taking the head of the Serpent along with them departed, and set sail for *Thrace*, where they arived the eighth day after: where they arived at *Constantinople* they landed, and went directly to the Palace (being followed by much people) where they found the Emperour *Esplandian*, and they cast themselves down at his feet. But he soon took them up, not knowing them: but when he and the rest knew them, they were all very joyfull, and they declared unto the Emperour the manner of their Inlargement, by the meanes of the Solitary Knight. The Emperour hearing them speak of the Solitary Knight of whom *Alquesa* had before spoken, did much marvell who it might be, and did say that he was the best Knight in the world. After that the Empreſſe *Leonarina* had seen *Gastiles*. *Esplandian* (sent him to the old Emperour, who he knew would be very joyfull to see him, and in the mean time, *Esplandian* recounted unto the Empreſſe

preſſe all that he had underſtood of the Solitary Knight : wherefore the Empreſſe ſaid unto him, I am perſwaded that this is our ſon, and that makes him not diſcover himſelfe. Madam answered the Emperour, I doe not think ſo, he went without any armes, nevertheſſe, be he who he will be (as for my part) I account him the valianteſt Knight in the world. *Alqueſa* was there at that time preſent, and therefore ſhe deſired the Emperour to let her have the head of the Serpent : whereby ſhe might carry it to *Trebisond*, that they might ſee the Proweſſe of the Solitary Knight, which deſire the Emperour granting, ſhe preſently ſet ſaile for *Trebisond*.

CHAP. XXXIV.

How the Solitary Knight ſailing on the Sea, was by fortune caſt at the foot of a Rock, wherein Amadis, Oriana, and others were priſoners, whom he delivered.



He Solitary Knight was ſo driven by a Tempeſt (after his departure from the Iſle of Serpents) that one munday morning he arived at the foot of a great Iſle, where he ſaw a ſhip, and many Mariners and Souldiers dead, floating on the waves. Wherefore he reſolved to land, and taking forth his horſe, he took his Lance, Sheild and Helmet, and ſet forwards untill he heard a voice ſaying pitifully. Oh ſovereign God! How is it that you conſent that the beſt King and Queene in the world ſhould this day do ſo miſerably! at this lamentation he looked about, and ſaw a Lady richly clad, who was purſued by a great villaine, holding an Ax in his hand. But he ſtaid when he ſaw the ſolitary Knight, and asked of him which way the Lady was gone, for he had loſt ſight

ſight of her; why ſaid the Solitary, you would hurt her, I and you too. At this word the Solitary couched his Lance, and thruſting the villaine on the ſtomack, threw him down dead to the ground. Then he hearkned whether he could hear the Ladie, which he could not, neither could he finde her : wherefore he ſet forwards in the way that he had ſeen the villaine come, untill he arived at a very fair plaine, at the end whereof he found a Caſtle, ſeated upon a high Rock. And approaching ſomewhat neerer, he ſaw four Knights without armes, whom two Giants armed at all points, drew along by force into the Fortreſſe. Wherefore the Solitary had an extraordinary great deſire to know who they were, and riding a great gallop, he found a man unarmed at the foot of a Rock, who asked him if he were any of the Kings Company who was led Priſoner. No ſaid he, but I pray you tell me who it is. By my faith answered the other, I know no more but thus, that I have ſeen him and three other Knights roughly handled, with one of the faireſt Ladies that ever I ſaw, bound together with great Ropes, which doth much grieve me. The ſolitary Knight did deſire the man to guide him to the place that would bring him to the Caſtle, which he did, there being but one way, and that ſo ſtrait, that he was forced to leave his horſe behinde him, and he alſo forgot his Lance : when he came to the gate of the Caſtle, he ſtood ſtill to hear what he could, or till ſome body ſhould come forth. And he heard one of the Giants, who ſaid: King, thou art come in good time, for me to revenge the death of my brother. Then he heard another, who answered, Giant, if thou art a Knight deſiring renown, revenge the death of thy brother with honor, give me armes and then doe thy utmoſt. He having ſaid thus, he heard a Ladie make pitiful lamentations. The ſolitary Knight not being able to endure any longer. knocked at the Gate, calling aloud to thoſe that are within. Then one of the Giants looked out of one of the towers, and asked him what he would have, and what he was. I am ſaid he a ſtrange Knight, who deſire

to see the King that is prisoner here, and therefore open me the Gate. By *Mabomet* said the other, I think thou art out of thy wits: when he had said thus, he soon came down and opened the Gate, and bid the solitary Knight guard himselfe: then they set upon one another. but the solitary Knight knowing that he had another to deale with all, when this was dispatched, he quickly killed him: when the other knew thereof, he was so enraged that he presently came forth, thinking quickly to vanquish the Solitary. But he was deceived, for he soon found the contrary: for the Solitary behaved himselfe so well, that he also vanquished this other Giant, and entring into the Castle, he saw in the great Hall King *Amadis*, *Oriana*, *Angriole*, *D'Estrevaux*, *Sarquiles*, and *Gandalin* tied by the necks with great cords, whereby he was much moved, and ran strait to unbinde them, but the villaines of the Castle had assembled together to assaile him, which he seeing, he first unbound *Amadis*, and then defended himself. *Amadis* and *Angriole* with the rest soon recovered weapons, and so behaved themselves against the villaines of the Castle, that with the help of the Solitary, they soon slew above twentie of them, and the rest came to mercy. They being vanquished *Amadis* went towards the Solitary to give him thanks for his aid, and earnestly intreated him to discover himselfe unto them, but he at the intreatie of *Oriana* onely told them that he was a French-man, and his name was the Solitary Knight, but he would not disarm his head, but desired leave to depart, which *Amadis* granted him, having first got him to promise to come visit him in great *Brittaine*. He having taken his leave of the Company, departed, and in his way he met with the Lady, whom he had formerly rescued from the villaine with the Axe, whom he knew to be countesse of *Denmark*, to whom he told, how *Amadis* and *Oriana* with the rest were all in safety, and he desired her to tell him how they happened on that Island, which she did, for said she, we were shipwrackt at Sea, and driven by tempest upon this Island, where we were no

sooner

sooner landed, but we were set upon by thirtie villaines, and two Giants who finding us unprovided of resistance, slew all our men, and took onely *Amadis*, and the rest that you have seen to mercy, onely I escaped, and am now agoing to die with Lady *Oriana*; rather then to remaine here, and perish alone. The Solitary having had this relation from her, left her, and departed, going to his barque, wherein he found the man that had taken his horse, but he soon entred thereinto, and threw him into the Sea. Thus having the Giants shield instead of his owne that was broken, he departed, sailing on the Sea in great griefe, for his Lady who had so banished him her presence, that he often times wished to be dead. In the mean time *Amadis* remained with his company, who were altogether ignorant of the Countre they were in, untill he asked an old man of the place, who told him that it was called the Castle of the Rock, and was the borders of the Savage Island, which *Grisant* of late possessed, whom said he, you did slay, as I have heard at the Seige of *Constantinople*, and the Giant that was killed last by the Knight that delivered you is his brother, and the other his couzen German who accompanied the King *Asmato*, and the Pagan Army into *Thrace*, so long as they staid there. And as *Amadis* was making this enquirie, the Countesse of *Denmark* came, which put *Gandalin* out of a great deale of care and feare; for he thought that he had lost her. The next day after they discovered a ship; wherefore they went to the Sea-side to see who was in it, which they soon knew; for it was *Argamont* with the Prince *Ardadile*, with many of their men, for which *Amadis* was very joyfull, for before they could not tell how to doe for a ship, with which they being furnished, they soon departed for Great *Brittaine*, leaving *Sarquiles* for Governor of the place, and they arived at Great *Brittaine*, and were received with great joy.

CHAP. XXXV.

How the Emperor of Trebisond took Port in his Countrey, and of the discourse between the Princesse Gricilera and of the Knight of the sphere.



Y^e the discourse of our History it hath been recited unto you, that after *Lisuart* departed from *Constantinople*, a great part of the Princes which came to succour *Ibrace*, imbarqued themselves to returne into their Countries, amongst the rest, the Emperor of *Trebisond* accompanies, with the knights *Florestan* and *Galumes*, but they had not sailed a thirtie leagues in the Sea, when the tempest and winde tossed them so impetuously, that they thought to perish, but finally at the end of the subsequent moneth, they attained the Port of *Trebisond*, of which the Emperess and the *Infanta Gricilera* being advertised, received a delectable contentation, and likewise all the other Ladies but *Onolorea*, the which for the jealousie she had conceived against her friend, was in marvellous paine, so that she passed her time in extreame dolour, but great was the joy and good cheare by all in generall, for the returne of their good Prince, insomuch that for the space of eight dayes, not any one desisted from making bonfires, and publique banquets; In the meane while the three Knights strangers, *Perion*, *Florestan*, and *Galumes* entertained their loves, to declare their affections, friendship and service, that they bore them, which daily augmented the sadness of the *Infanta Onolorea*, for the suspicion which she had conceived in her soule against *Lisuart*, whom *Gricilera* enquires for of *Perion* ordinarily, but he could not give any other reason, but that he departed one night he knew not whether, neither had he since heard any thing of him, at which he was greatly astonished, truly this news was little agreeable to *Onolorea*, who began thence

thence forward to repent her selfe of the letter which she had so slightly written, which might be the greatest injury in the world, seeing that so unadvisedly she gave credit to that which was brought to her of *Graciles*: many dayes thus passed, till that *Alquesa* returning from *Constantinople*, entred the Hall, accompanied with foure men, bearing the head of a Serpent, and after reverence made, putting her knees to the ground, said to the Emperor, Sir, I bring you certaine news of the best Knight in the world, and of whom I will recount unto you strange things: know then sir, that returning from the Country of *Ibrace*, I was taken by foure Gally-slaves, and put in this ship, but God be thanked I did not long sojourne there, by the meanes of him I now speak to you of, who named himselfe the solitary Knight: then she recounted to him the combate which he had had, the opinion which she held of him since the death of the Serpent, the deliverance of *Gastiles* and *Tartarie*, and finally, all that which you have heard of him, at which every one was astonished, and it fell into the heart of *Perion* that it was *Lisuart* and no other, which to pass the better unknown had changed his name, all the while that *Alquesa* was recounting his adventures, every one assured themselves that his name was not concealed from her; then every one regarded with admiration the head of the beast, which the Emperor caused to be fixed to the principall gate of his Palace, and to paint the manner how he had defeated him, at the Evening *Alquesa* finding *Perion* at leasure, demanded of him what usage he had of *Gricilera*: By my faith friend said he, without you I know my affaires grow worse, for every day the amity decreaseth on her side; beleve not that said she, I hope though you thinke the contrary, before that two dayes are expired you will tell me another tale, the next day she addressed her self to the Princesse, of whom she inquired secretly, what good cheare she hath made her Knight since his returne: ah my great friend answers she I cannot by any meanes yet compasse that which my heart so earnestly desireth,

fireth, for I have not had yet meanes to speak to him in private, neither to shew him any signe of friendship, for you know that I am little estranged from the Emperess, and less from my sister: In good faith Madam, said *Alquesa* you have wrong, it is said that necessity is the Master of arts, but love strong young and more lively: you say that you have not had meanes to speak to him, seeing that you know him yours, it will be very easie to cause him to come in the night into this garden, nigh adjoyning to these windowes, to devise there privily as much as you please: You say well, replied she, I never yet thought of it, but seeing you have given me so good an occasion, I pray you to tell him of it: the wall then is low, and the window of my chamber easie, I will not faile to finde him there this evening about midnight, for God sake perswade so that he might come there; leave that to me said *Alquesa*, I promise you for him, and if *Onolorea* had not approached, they had continued their discourse longer, but they refer'd that till the evening: in the mean time *Alquesa* went to advise *Perion* of all that he had to doe, *Florestan* and he did at that time lie together, and although that they were great friends, he would not tarry with him, by reason of the good news which he had understood, insomuch that seeing him asleep, and the houre approach which he had been assigned, tooke his sword, and covered with a scarlet mantle went secretly from his chamber into the garden, where she entered upon the wall approaching the window which he held open, in which he saw the Princesse *Gricilerea* onely. and in such equipage, that he had thought to have had *Alessus* fortune, but that his head was not cornuted, but he was such a bondslave to her service, that he would not complaine against her, but would rather suffer death and death againe, if it might be possible, rather then offend her, and although through the ardencie of his love he trembled like an aspen leafe at her sight, nevertheless she which had caused this evill, gave him such facility of speech, that making great reverence to the Princesse, he said to her,

her, I may well at this day name my selfe the most happiest Knight in the universe; receiving this favor from you, which is more gracious then would be expected from such a Princess, to one endowed with so small merits, as I am. In good faith my friend replied she, you ought to owne that to your selfe, and not to me, for God hath endowed you with so many affections, that you have power to force any Lady, be she never so faire to love you: so then I beseech you that (reserving my honor) you content your selfe with that which you have already acquired upon me) assuring you my mind, that I will take both paine and pleasure to speak to you in this place at any time, when opportunity presents it selfe; Ah Madam said he, for Gods sake pardon me, and esteeme me not I beseech you so irrational, as not to know this favour to be such, that all the Knights of the earth together merited not such good fortune: Nevertheless, if it please you yet to permit me to kisse your hands, you will render the obligation which I owe you in such extremity, that I have neither body, soule or puissance, which doth not glorifie it selfe to be assured of such beatitude: my friend answers the Princess, you may not be refused, for seeing that my heart is yours, the rest of me as far as my honor may permit is ready at your disposall, then she presented to him her right hand through the iron gate, so that *Perion* having kissed it, she being vanquished with love imbraces him with her other arme, which *Perion* feeling, advanced himselfe, so that he joynes his mouth with hers, contenting their spirits for an houre, according as the place would permit them, which struck *Perion* into such an extasie of joy, that put him so tremble more then he did before, and caused him to lose the facilitie of his speech, and I beleve certainly, if you had demanded of him what good or evill he then indured, he could not have told you, love so much alienates the senses of those which she handles well, for the certainty of which I could give you many examples of others which were in his coudition, *Perion* being returned into his first

power, fearing to shew himselfe so unadvised before *Gricilerea*, for the familiarity which he had used towards her, began to say to her, Madam, I humbly intreat you not to take in ill part the incivility which I have used towards you, and impute not this fault but to love, which hath constrained my affection to obey it, neverthelesse, if you judge me worthy of any punishment, I am ready to indure it, if it be not the estrangement from your good grace: my friend replies she, the punishment which you shall receive of me is that, I pray and command you that you love me above all things, without ever parting from this Court without my leave, for the molestation which I have indured formerly for your absence, which had almost brought me to my grave, how many times did I inquire for you, (knowing you were gone to Sea, and attending your return) what Rocks, what Gulfs were in this Coast which might cause your perill? how many sage Pilots have I commanded to come to me, to learne of those the names of the proper winds, whether contrary to advance you or retarde you? how many teares have gone out of my eyes, seeing the sea tempestuous, the winde and the heaven troubled, dancing in a thousand millions of danger, which happen commonly to loving persons? In good faith my friend, the fear which I had to lose you, made me daily complaine, which are commonly incident to those which are attached with the like maladie, as I was since the day that you received the Order of Knighthood in this Court: and thus falling from one thing to another, she came to speak of *Lisvart*, the which said she, hath had great injury in addressing himself to my sister, for to make you know it, I will endeavour to recount all whereof he is accused: how Madam answers he? I thought not that he had offended her, if she hath not taken any offence at the extreme affection which he beareth her: I know not said *Gricilerea* how you take this friendship, but I know not how to excuse him, see the promises which he made before his departure, that he would not any way revile her, then she recounted to him

him all that you have heard, as the Damsell Brother of *Gricilerea* had reported to her: In good faith faith *Perion*, I know now that was the cause which made him depart without speaking unto me, and neverthelesse I took it upon my soule, that the accusation is false, which gives me more sorrow for his absence then before, seeing he hath been so ill intreated for loving so loyally: alas said *Gricilerea*, what is that you tell me? is it possible that the page should thus misinforme us? yes upon my faith, replies *Perion*, I assure you that disloyalty had no part in him: truly said she, my sister hath been evilly advised, and I thinke not but she will much displeasure him when she is ascertain'd of the truth of this: Madam replies he, if you please, I will goe in search of him. and I will travell in such sort, that either I will bring him back, or loose my life in the attempt: I pray you faith *Gricilerea* be assured that my sister (knowing her fault) will receive him at his returne with much amity; they had continued longer in these discourses, but the day breaking, forced them to retire, taking a gracious farewell one of the other, going together to returne into that place againe, the third night following; the *Infanta* then retiring into her chamber went to bed, on the other side the Knight of the Sphere taking the way as he came, went to bed with *Florestan*, esteeming himselfe the happiest Knight in the world to have made such a choice: the morning appearing, he being in good equipage returned to the Palace, where already the tables were covered for dinner, where it pleased the Emperour to honor the Ladies so much, as to place him and his companions among them.

CHAP. XXXVI.

How the Knight of the Sphere followed the Dutches of Austria, to combate against two of her Unckles, who had taken her Countrie from her.



He Napkins being taken away when water was presented to wash, there entred the Hall a very faire Damself, clothed in mourning, conducted by an old man, who led her under the arme, accompanied with twelve Damsells, twentie Knights, and as many Squires at her arivall, this Lady cast her selfe at the feet of the Emperour, demanding if the Knight of the true Crosse, or him of the Sphere were in the Court, or one whose renown is now through all Countries named the solitary Knight, who not long since, by force of armes delivered King *Amadis*, the Queen, and their retinue being imprison'd: then she recounted all, as you have heard, whereat they were astonish'd: the Emperor answered her, Damself, of all those which you demand for, there is no other here but the Knight of the Sphere, whom you may see. The Damself regarded him as one expecting succour, and answered the Emperor, in truth sir I beleieve it is true, at these words *Perion* advanced, and demanded of her if he would doe her any service, truly Knight said she, I doe beleieve you was onely borne to give succour to such distressed Damselfs as I am: Lady answers *Perion*, I am ready to succour you, and all other distressed ones to my power: therefore I desire you to tell the occasion of your sadnesse; sir Knight said she, I am daughter to the Duke of *Austria*, who dying and leaving me in my nonage to the tuition of two of my Unckles, according as their Reason or honor should direct them; seeing me onely here, and a woman besieged of *Vienna*, which after a long siege was constrained

to

to yeild on these conditions, that if I would finde a Knight who would combate against those two, and vanquish them, I should be restored to my right, otherwise not: to this agreement I condescended, and taking my Journie from thence I heard of the renown of two Knights which were in *Constantinople*: the one being you, the other the Knight of the true Crosse, now sir I humbly intreat you (seeing you know the occasion) to pitie me, and undertake my quarrell just and reasonable; *Perion* being at a stand, by reason of the promise he made to his Lady, not to depart without her leave, but she quickly eased him of that, saying to *Perion*, in good faith Knight you ought to grant this Lady that which she demands: Madam replied he, I am ready to obey your Command, then the Damself thanked him, desiring him to goe with her presently, hoping that having so good a Knight, the issue would be according to her expectation: so he taking leave of the Emperor and of his Lady, went with the Dutchesse and embarked himselfe, hoisting saile towards *Austria*, the Dutchesse doing him all the honor that she could: but they had not long sailed, when Fortune shewed her selfe unconstant, tossing them so outragiously for twentie dayes entire, that they knew not where they were, but one Friday morning they were cast nigh a shoare, to which adjoynd a faire Citie, encompassed with walls and strong towers, out of which they saw approach a great number of Ladies and Damsells, but especially one well habited, and very beautifull, whom they supposed to be their Lady and Mistres; at that time came out a Giant, armed at all points, upon a bay horse, holding in his hand a Lance, marching with a slow pace towards a pavillion, which they saw pitched upon the green, out of the which suddenly came a Knight well accoutred, mounted on a white horse, armed with green armes, bearing in his shield a rampant Lion, having its head divided, and many other Knights accompanied him: the Knight of the Sphere knew well that the fight with the Giant was as much as against two ordinary

ordinary men, he said to the Dutcheſs, I deſire greatly to ſee the end of this combate which the Green Knight hath enterprized againſt that Devill, the Dutcheſs to pleaſe him obeyed his will, in the meane time commanding the Mariners to caſt anchor, the Giant and the Knight met each other, the Giant encountring, the greene Knight gave him ſo dangerous a thruſt with his ſword, that every one thought he was a dead man; but it was not ſo, for the ſword paſſed between the body and the arme, the greene Knight gave the Giant a great wound, and their horſes encountring each other, tumbled down with their Maſters under them, notwithstanding he with the green armes being quick and nimble, incontinently recovered his feet, taking his ſword in his hand he went againſt the Giant, who was newly riſen, being ſo bruſed by the fall of his horſe upon him, which advantage the Knight of the green armes eſpying, gave him ſuch a blow with his ſword upon his arme, that he thereby received a great Battleax which he carried at his girdle, put himſelfe in duty, to render the greene Knight that which he had ready, but the wound in his arme prevented his intended purpoſe, which by little and little ſo weakned him, that the green Knight comforted his enemy with the dead, praſing the Gods for the Victory which he had ſo happily gotten the faire Lady, which was at the tower, ſeeing the Giant dead inſtantly ſent two of her Damſells towards the green Knight, who having ſpoken to him preſently returned, bringing their Miſtreſs accompanied with a great number of Gentlemen and Citizens, and others which kindly embraced the victorious Knight, ſhe her ſelfe conducting him into the City, from whence ſhe ſent to know what Veſſell that was which newly anchored there, the meſſenger approaching the ſea-ſide, ſaw *Perion* upon the hatches of the ſhip, to whom he graciouſly ſaid, ſir Knight, the *Infanta Liſtria* Lady of this Land ſent me to know who hath anchored in her harbour, ſir ſaid *Perion*, it is a ſtrange Knight, and a Damſell caſt upon this *Thrace* by the fury of the windes and

and tempeſt, he of the City having this answer returned to his Miſtreſs: the Dutcheſſe ſeeing they might hinder their intended purpoſe if they ſtayed any longer, commanded the Mariners to hoize ſaile: but the ſea was yet ſo tempeſtuous, that they were of advice rather to remaine to the mercie of men then of the waves, notwithstanding at all times they were in readineſſe, if they ſhould chance to be aſſailed; at that time there ſtreined to come towards them nigh a hundred men from the town, well armed, who ſeeing *Perion* yet upon the hatches, cryed to him that he ſhould yeild himſelfe priſoner, if he would ſave his life; but he answered them that ſo long as he could hold his ſword, he would not endure their captivitie: at the end of theſe words, they entred into a great ſhip which was at the Port, and by force of ſailes and oares joyning with *Perion* began a cruell combate, at this aboarding; for the Knight of the Sphere never ſtruck any but he killed him outright, at laſt, he cleſt the head of their Chieftain, which ſo affrighted them, that they durſt not againe undertake to aſſaile *Perion*, but ſhamefully fled towards the Citie to the old Lady mother of *Lyſtria* (who was then talking with the green Knight) and ſaid to her, Madam, I bring you as ſtrange news as ever you heard, your men which you ſent to aſſaile that ſhip at the Port are all routed by the valour of one onely Knight and the Mariners. the old Lady would have gone to have ſeene what he was, but was hindred by *Lyſtria*, who prayed her to entertaine the Knight, whiſt that ſhe undertook that voyage: and ſo taking ſix Damſells to accompany her, ſhe went towards the ſhoare, where ſhe ſtayed ſome time for to ſee the Combate, but hardly had ſhe ſojourned there halfe an houre, but ſhe ſaw eight of her men reverſed, at which ſhe was marvelouſly diſpleaſed, and entring into a Squiff, ſhe approached the ſhip, cauſing her men to retire, addreſſing her ſelfe to *Perion*, to whom ſhe ſaid, I pray you render your ſelfe my priſoner, aſſuring you that it ſhall be both for your honor and profit: Madam ſaid *Perion*, if you command me

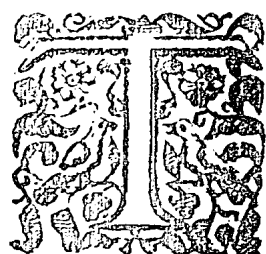
to doe it, I must obey, but if prevented to deteine me by force I had rather loose my head then suffer you to doe it: Knight said she, if you please you may come along with me, under such condition as you shall think fit to accord to, for the people of this City are numerous, and you know well you cannot resist them long: so *Perion* and the Dutcheß entred into the Skuiff which had brought *Lystria* (when they were aware the Knight of the Sphere tooke off his Helmet to refresh himself, then the *Infanta* seeing the great beauty which he had, could not conteine her selfe, but said to him, In good faith Knight you are endowed with as much beautie as valour and courtesie: and *Lystria* holding him by the hand brought him into the Palace, where she presented him to her mother, saying to her, Madam, I can assure you that this Knight hath alone done that which a thousand durst not enterprize: I think as much said the old Ladie, then the Green Knight seeing *Perion* run to imbrace him, crying out my God what is this I see? what adventure hath brought you into these parts? *Perion* seeing himselfe so imbraced, knew not at the first sight who he was: but suddenly recollecting himselfe, he knew that it was *Garinter* King of *Jaguetba*: then he imbraced him and said, truly my great friend, I am no less astonished at your presence then you at mine; *Lystria* and her mother seeing the contentment with which they entertained themselves, prayed them to favor her daughter so much as to tell them from whom they had receiv'd so singular a pleasure, specially *Lystria* hoping to have *Garinter* for her husband: and for this cause did all that she could to please them, but because both of them were very weary, they were disarmed, and conducted into a fair chamber, where they were used as well as they merited: then being in their chamber, *Perion* desired the King to tell him the occasion that incited him to combate against the Giant, my friend said he, know that the old Lady mother of *Lystria*, remaining a widow (after her husband was dead) by whom she had one childe which is this Princess, heir of this Realme great and

and opulent, who was a neighbour, and being enamoured of *Lystria*, requires her many times in marriage, but she put him off with this honest excuse, saying she would never love any man: the Gyant having this answer, waged war against this land, but by good hap I travelling nigh Countries, hearing of it, undertook the Combate against the Giant, what successe I had it will be needles for me to recount, seeing you know it already. Returning then to my purpose, the Knights being healed of their wounds, and *Perion* knowing the will of *Garinter*, who was no lesse amorous of her then she of him: one day as the mother and the daughter were advising with them, *Perion* addressing himselfe to the *Infanta*, began to say unto her, Madam, it seemeth to me, you are very much bound unto the King for hindring the marriage of you to him, in whom nature hath placed so much deformity: In good faith replies she, you say true: Madam said the King, pardon me if it please you for my presumption, thinking my selfe so happie in serving you, that I would not change my felicitie for any content the world can afford: you may think as it pleaseth you answered she, for I shall think my self honored, if you please to accept me for your wife with this Realme, that I shall attaine the perfection of my desire, knowing well, that if I was Ladie of all the world, I could not cancell that obligation in which you have bound me: this speech proffered so graciously by one to so faire and beautifull a Princess, enflamed so much the heart of this young King, that he said to her, Madam, I should be very unwise, if I should not accept of the favour which you present unto me, and making a great reverence unto her, kissed her at that time in signe of matriage, of which the Knight of the Sphere was marvellously glad, so that as much for the good and advancement of his Cousen, as to follow the Dutcheß in her enterprize: he caused the Nuptials to be celebrated the fourth day following, with great memory and solemnitie, *Garinter* being crowned King, receiving homage of the Realme of the Ile of *Cythera*,

thurea, and *Lyfftria* (from which the Queen took her name, being Sovereign Lady both of the one and the other: a little while after *Perion* and the Dutchesse taking leave of this compony, reentred the Sea, following the coast of *Almanie*.

CHAP. XXXVII.

How the Knight of the Sphere forced the Town of Vienna in Austria, and rendred the Dutchesse free with all her Countrie.



He Knight of the Sphere and the Dutches being reentred into their Vessel, coasted along *Almanie* before they arived at *Austria*, passing alwayes their time at the game of Chesse, at which they tooke pleasure, chiefly the Dutchesse who vanquished with the love of *Perion* was seldome out of his sight, but he thought of no such matter: but at last love worked so strong upon her senses that she fell sick, which the Prince noting demanded of her how she did, Knight replies she (in sighing) very ill, for thinking to recover my Land I have lost my selfe, alas! if pity be in your heart, for Gods sake leave rather the losse of my Countreies, and render me my libertie, for under colour of purchasing my good, you have ruined my life, Love hath already so inflamed my heart with your beautie, that if you do not pitie me tis impossible I should live, having said this, she follows him, imbracing his armes, and kissing him so affectionately that it seemed she would swoond, at which the Knight of the Sphere marvelled, but he had more pitie to the Dutchesse, then loyaltie to his Lady, in such manner; that after he had kissed her he put himselfe in possession of the best thing she had, rendring her than
very

very houre Mistres of a worke where she not yet began her apprenticeship, so passing all the night till the day approached, he retires himselfe into his chamber, leaving the Dutchesse amongst her women, they not perceiving any thing: at last she discovered the Country of *Austria*, taking Port before the great City, where her Subjects held the Seige, who receiv'd great joy at her arrivall: the same day by the advice of the Knight of the Sphere, *Briantes* was sent (being one of the ancientest in her troop) towards *Bortin* and *Alintes* (so were her two unckles named) to whom he recounted the returne of their Lady, and the arrivall of her Champion, who according to the promise which they had sworne, was readie to combat both of them: *Bortin* and *Alintes* hearing this message, laughed heartily, and said to him, *Briantes* return to thy Mistres, and tell her that it would be a great folly in us, to adventure our lives to hazard that which we hold sure, and that if she hath taken much paines to finde a Knight for her, her travell is our pleasure, and her labour is lost. Ah sirs said *Briantes*! will you break both the faith and the oath to which you so solemnly swore? depart said *Bortin*, and tell us not of those things: then *Briantes* returned to the camp of the Dutchesse, who hearing the issue of his legation was very much troubled at it, and complained so pitifully, that every one had great compassion of her, but the Knight of the Sphere comforted her saying, doe you esteeme these Rascals safe within the wals or no? I assure you that within a little while, both the City and Countrie shall be rendred into your hands. This promise gave hope to the Dutchesse, and from that time the Knight of the Sphere sought by all meanes possible how he might accomplish his enterprize, for the towne was strong, well walled, and furnished with men and necessary munitions: then knowing it impregnable he called together all the Captaines to know how they stood affected to their Mistres, and after he heard their accuser in generall, he said unto them my friends, the Moon now is old, and the obscurity of
A a 3 the

he night very great, arme your selves, and bear upon your harness a white cloth, by the which you may be known, you have also in this Camp as I have heard, a great number of Ladders very fit to mount the wall, I will depart upon the ninth hoare, and will finde meanes to enter into the Town alone, faile not so soon as you hear the rumor to come to the gates well prepared: for I have an intention to make ready worke for the enemy, and to hinder them from defending the walls and gates, if you be diligent: this advice was well liked by some and blamed by others, nevertheless it was accepted, and at the appointed hoare the Knight of the Sphere tooke his armes and went afoot towards the town: when he came to the Centinells they demanded who marched there, friend said he, goe I pray you, and tell the Duke *Bortni* and his brother *Alintes*, that I would speak with them, about a business of concernment; at this word one of them who went the round promised him to doe his message, and a little after returned, praying him to mount the wall, for said the souldier, the Duke hath commanded that the Gates shall not be opened: well, replied the Knight, I shall obey his command, and when he was entred into the Town, some souldiers conducted him to the Palace, and finding there *Bortni* and *Alintes*, the Knight of the Sphere made them a great reverence: friend said *Bortni*, take off your helmet, and speak to us in surctie, sir replied he, I will take it off if you please to command, all withdraw themselves except you and your brother: the Dukes *Bortni* and *Alintes* who suspected nothing, commanded every one to withdraw, which being done, they said to the Knight of the Sphere: now sir you may put off the helmet, stay said the Knight, I will tell you that you are Traitors: having so said, putting his hand to his sword, gave such such a blow to *Bortni* that he cleft him to the shoulders, which *Alintes* seeing was astonished, escaping himselfe and began to crie aloud, Arme Arme, for we are betraied; the Knight of the Sphere purposed to gaine the entrie of the Chamber, and he himselfe

selfe gave the Alarum by the windowes to cause those of the City to forsake the walls, that his men might scale them with more facility: the rumour was incontinently dispersed every where, and all ran towards the Palace thinking to take *Perion*, and cut him in pieces; but his men ascended, entring into the town like an impetuous torrent, killing all before them: for the enemies pressed so to the Knight of the Sphere that he could not have long resisted, if his men had not arived to his succour: but they being come quickly freed him from danger, making such havock of their enemies, that they soon gained the town: the Citie being thus taken, they searched about for *Alintes* whom at last they found in the head of a small Hie, who after some small bickering they subdued, leaving him dead in the place, the other forces seeing their Captaine slaine yeilded themselves to *Perion*, on condition that he would save their lives, which he granted: the Dutchesse having news of the surprisall of *Vienna*, accompanied with a goodly traine of Knights, Gentlemen and Ladies entred the Citie, taking all those to mercie which had so unjustly bore armes against her; the Dutchesse being thus possessed of her Right, feasted every day him from whom she had receiv'd so exceeding a pleasure, but for all that she could doe, she could not detaine the Knight of the Sphere, who deliberated to take leave of the Dutchesse, and if she would not counsell him to goe to depart secretly: and as he had determined to put it in execution; humbly intreating the Dutchesse, that seeing now her business was concluded, she would permit him to depart in quest of a kinsman of hers, but she would not condescend, doing all she could to honor *Perion*: therefore according to his determination, the new Knight after he took his armes, mounting upon his horse took a by-path, that he might not be found; the Dutchesse advertized of his departure, was readie to die with griefe, but one thing recomforted her, feeling her selfe great with childe, that though she had lost the father she might preserve the fruit. At the end of nine moneths she

she was brought to bed of a son, which she named *Florelus*, who proved one of the best Knights in the world, but because the subject of our History tendeth not to speak of him, we will leave him till another time, to declare unto you that which happened to the Solitary Knight.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Now upon the end of the year the Solitary Knight departed from the Coast: and he after he had finished many strange adventures, encountred the Knight of the Sphere, with whom he had combate, the one not knowing the other.

HHe Solitary Knight having left *Amadis*, as it hath been told you, entred his Barque, by which he was conducted through many strange Isles, and during that year vanquished many Giants, with a great number of Knights, which we will not mention to avoid prolixitie: the fifth day after his imbarquement he arived at a Port, where he took land, and taking his horse mounted upon him, armed at all points to defend himselfe, if he should be assailed; riding along he went into a great Forest, where finding two cross wayes he determined to take the most used: but he had not rid long, when he heard great lamentation proceed from a woman as he thought: then taking that way as he thought from whence he heard the crie; he espied a Damsell tied by the haire of the head to the branch of a tree, and approaching more nigh, he saw that it was *Alquise*: therefore putting his hand hastily to his sword he cut the branch: then she knew him as he which had delivered her once before from the hands of Pirats, and bending her knees to the ground to thank him she said: Ah Knight! succourer

succourer of all Damsells blessed be you, and he which hath endowed you with so many graces, who had brought you unto this condition answered he, Alas sir said she! a Rogue met me as I arived in the wood, and because I would not obey his lust he used me as you see, and tooke his way along this valley travelling toward the right hand; God never help me said he, if I doe not make him dearly pay for his great incivility, and attend me I pray you, sir Knight replies she, there is not far off hence a Castle, where I dined yesterday, there I will stay for you if you please; no said the Knight, I will not goe thither before I have chastned this Knights insolencie; having thus said, he leapt upon his horse, taking the way which *Alquise* had shewed him: and about the setting of the Sun he discovered him whom he searched at the side of the Forest, whom he called, but the other made no account of it: therefore the Solitary pressed his horse very much: nevertheless he attained not him before it was night, saying unto him, damned Knight who would force Ladies, now you shall not escape me before you have receiv'd payment for your wickedness; at this word the Knight turning about his face without any answer to the other, put his Lance in his rest, and went against the Solitary, who encountred him in such manner that he dismounted him, and scorning to have any advantage of his enemy, alighted also, and began a marvellous combate, which indured not long, for the Solitary at last left him dead upon the place, the Solitary seeing the night very much advanced, deliberated to repose himselfe by a clear fountaine, till it was day, but the thoughts of his Lady obstructed him from sleeping, untill he heard a noise of horses, and a little after perceived a Knight armed at all points, who descending from his horse went to the fountaine: but he had not long staid there, but sighing said, oh love love! you have put me in so high a place, that I may name my selfe the most happy Knight in the world, and best loved of one who holds the soveraigntie of beautie; by my head

Knight said the Solitary, I will not indure such blasphemie against Madam *Onolorea*: which he at the fountaine hearing, demanded who he was, I am said the Solitary, one which would know of you the name of her you love, what profit shall it be to you said the other? such profit answers the Solitary as shall turne to your Damage, for I will not indure so great injurie against my Ladie; oh audacious fellow, will you nominate her to be Queene of beautie whom many far surpasseth? before that thou and I part I will make thee wiser: then encountering one another by star-light, they handled themselves so cruelly in a little time, that their Sheilds and coate of armour were hackt and broken in so many places, that the field was all covered therewith: nevertheless they maintained themselves so well the one against the other, that for the space of two houres or more, they took not breath, nor did they know to whom the victory would encline, which gave no small amazement to the Solitary, not having found at any time so hardy a Champion as would withstand him, who had killed and vanquished many strong and cruell Giants, they having already combated about foure houres without any advantage; day began to appeare, the Solitary being outrageous went towards his enemy, and taking him by the Choller was ready to take off his head: when he perceived in the Sheild wherewith he was covered, the Sphere which was there painted, and thereby he saw it was his Uncle, at which he was very much displeased, casting his sword to the ground, crying out: ah fortune! how adverse art thou against me in all things? and putting his knees to the ground, taking off his Helmet, said to *Perion*: Sir my Uncle, for Gods sake pardon me, truly I had enough knowledge of the valour which is in you, not to adventure as I have done, *Perion* knowing him, embraced him saying: in good faith my Nephew, the approaching of the day was well for me, for if you had not known me without doubt my end had been nigh, and as they were in those termes *Alquesa* came, who had walked

all

all the night to finde the Solitary, at the sight of them she kissing them both, their heads being deformed, and therefore she cried out, oh God! what adventure have I encountered, seeing with my eyes the two best Knights in the world: then she demanded of them the occasion of their combate, friend, said the Solitary: fortune which is not onely content to follow and molest me, treats also by despite of me) those which are not unlyable of my misl ap: but I pray you finde some meanes to stanch our wounds: then she tooke her handkerchief, tearing it in pieces to binde up their wounds, which she having done they mounted on horie back, riding towards the Castle, where she had lodged the precedent night, where being arived, the Lord thereof knowing their adventures, treated them so courteously, that in a short time they recovered their former estate,

CHAP. XXXIX.

How the two Knights took leave of their hoste and reentring in the Sea were cast into great Britaine, where they had combate against Florestan and Par-menir not knowing them.



He two Knights being healed of wounds, and able to bear travell, *Perion* on day among others devising with *Alquesa*, prayed her to tell him what adventure had brought her into those Countries: In good faith replies she, know that after my departure from *Trebisond* going in search of you, by the Commandement of my Lady *Gricilerea*, I took you in *Austria*, where I was advertised that the Dutcheff by your meanes was inthronized in her territories, and that not

six moneths before my arivall there, you departed from her without her leave: therefore traversing *Almaigne*, I ran to *Constance*, where they told me that you having combated a Knight which would have forced a Damself, after you had defeated him, tooke this way, which I having understood did the like: but my journe had been hindred if by good fortune the Solitary Knight had not arived, when he delivered me from the hands of a villaine, who would have deprived me of my honor, hanging me to the branch of a tree: Now having found you, I desire you to returne back againe: for my Lady having heard from her sister that you were gone in search of *Lisuart*, received marvellous contentment: for I assure you that after you returne, you shall receive better usage then you had before: my great friend replies he, I will performe her commandement, and beleve that my Nephew shall be also ready to returne with me: then they went to finde *Lisuart*, who was in another chamber, and *Alquesa* so well acted her part that she brought to passe all that you have declared, at which he was so pleased, that hee seemed to be departed from hell into Paradise: and nevertheless remembring himselfe of that which he had indured, would not contain himselfe: but said aloud: Ah my Lady! that so much evill as I have suffered without meriting it; Alas! not having offended you had I need of so cruell chastisement? which without doubt had been too gracious, if I had committed the fault imputed to me: Ah *Gradisilea*! you have delivered me from death: but truly before this comfortable newes, what afflictions? what paines? what dolours? did I suffer, and all for your occasion: in truth my great friend *Alquesa* said he, imbracing her, I am not of power sufficient to acknowledge your benevolence towards me: for if I have saved your life by one blow, you have saved mine a thousand times a day; Sir said *Alquesa*, leave this purpose, and deliberate with your selfe to take your way towards *Trebisond*: then she recounted to him all that passed since his departure, which our History hath before newly

newly declared; I beleve said *Perion*, that we shall finde yet there *Florestan* and our Companions: she answered he was departed from the Court malecontent, because that the Emperor hath married *Griliana* with the King of *Breigne*, and *Parmenir Galmases* and the others that have followed this occasion, are retired to the Defended Mountaine, towards King *Norandell*, against whom the Turks wage strong and cruell war: In good faith faith the Solitary, they have had reason, and *Griliana* could not excuse her selfe, that she had passed her word to another and could not recede from it: *Alquesa* answered, let us embarque where we will discourse more at leisure: therefore the next day following having thanked their host for their good entertainment, they took their way toward the barque of the Solitary: but before they dislodged, the Knight of the Sphere chused himselfe to be called the Knight of the Almane Knight, and for that occasion prayed the Knight of the Castle to give him new armes, which he willingly accorded to, giving him one of azure adorned with stars of Gold, and a horse to the Solitary as faire as possible, to whom they acknowledged themselves greatly obliged: and as they traversed the Forest to goe to the Sea, the Solitary recited the fortunes that he had passed since his departure from *Constantinople*: the vision that he had had the night following, and the counsell that the *fantosme* gave him, to enter the barque which he had since managed without any Pilot, at which the Almane Knight was abashed, but *Alquesa* assured them that it was conducted by her father, who curious of *Lisuart*'s safety, appeared to him, and made ready for him that Vessell, in which said she we will embarque our selves: for we shall navigate then more surely then if we had the best mariners of the Sea to conduct us; about the evening they arived at the barque, and entring therein found it victualled, with all that was necessary, and from that very instant began to saile so swiftly, that they lost sight of the land eight dayes, during which thinking to goe into *Asia*, they were cast from the Mediter-

mean Sea into the Ocean, and traversing the Columes of *Hercules*, found themselves one Sunday at the break of day nigh a rich faire Haven, where they demanded of some Fishermen the name of the Country: Knights said they, you are in great Brittain, and in the King *Amadis* of *Gauls* Territories, whose name is spread through all the universe, and although at first such news was little agreeable to the two Knights: nevertheless the Solitary prayed *Almea* to land, and to goe see the Country, which having done, they taking their horses out of their barque, mounted upon them armed, either to assaile or defend, and to the end that they might not be known by the meanes of *Almea*, they prayed her to keep her selfe as much covered as the might possible: so taking their way towards a great Forest they espied two Knights; the one of them armed with black Armour, bearing in his sheild the like colour, but that in the middle there was painted a divided Hart, and the other had Armor all white, with a sheild of the same: he with the black Armes addressing himselfe to the Solitary, spake graciously unto him, saying: I pray you Knight, let us break a Lance together for the love of Ladies, you will not refuse me, as I think, at least if you be he as I thinke you to be by your sheild, whose Prowess is renowned in all places: and moreover you are now in a Country, where those that have desire to acquire honor by well combating, finde enough to employ them: Sir Knight replies the Solitary, seeing the colour you bear, I think rather for a companion then any other think; it is not that said the other, I desire to give my selfe against him with whom I cannot acquire that honor: therefore sir I would not have you impute blame unto me; but accept of the request which I ask you: Knight replies the Solitary; I desire you to excuse me at this Lance, and demand of me any other thing and you shall not be refused: seeing that you will have it so said the other, I recommend you to God: having said thus, passing from the Solitary he said to his Companion: upon my faith these two Knights

seeme

seeme to me valiant men, and I would willingly know who they are: I know not said the other. The Solitary and his Companion rode a long time in the Forest till they arived at a faire shadie place, where they dismounted to refresh themselves; for the heat was great, and then they satisfied their appetite with that which *Almea* brought, after they had refreshed themselves, they remounted, traversing the wood till they all came at a crosse way, where they espied under a Fountaine an armed Knight, who talked with a Damsell, and laughed together as it seemed to them: nevertheless, so soon as the Knight discerned them, he put on his Helmet, and holding his Lance at the point came towards them, saying: Knight, passe not beyond this place; if you will not give me the Damsell as you conduct, to serve her which attendeth me under this tree; *Almea* who went before answered him: I beleve Knight, that I am in a safer guard then if I were with you, How answers the Alman? we are two and you alone, doe not you provoke us to combate said sir Knight: leave the Damsell in peace, and us also: to these words said the other, I will have her whether you will or no, to whom the Solitary answered, have I guarded her thus long to let you have her? leave you her, and goe search other servants for your Mistres; the other shaking his head, said; she shall serve me and you also: saying thus, hasting his Helmet he came towards the Solitary, and encountred him so strongly that he broke his Lance to the point; but the Solitary so rudely handled him that he kild him at the first stroke: at which the Damsell was wrath, and cryed pitiouly: ah Villaine! who hath killed the thing in the world as I loved best: this fortune you shall dearly buy, and so tearing her hair, as desperate she mounted upon her horse, and took her way through the wood, the two Knights not following her, but went another way, riding along till the night surprised them: therefore they dismounted them: then having satisfied their owne stomachs, they laid themselves down to sleep untill the morning,

when

when being ready to get a horseback, they heard one call them, and a little after knew her to be the Mistres of the dead Knight, who was accompanied both with the black and the white Knight, which without any other defiance, encountred each other; but the Alman and the Solitary receiv'd them so well that they would not much boast of their entertainment, everting them rudely from their horses: Nevertheless they lifted themselves up lightly, and putting their hands to their swords, said to the others: Knights, descend from your horses or we will kill them, and for that cause alighting, began between them four: such a combate, that the two Damsells thought that they had never seen a more perilous, and so they mainteined themselves one against the other a whole houre and more, that it would have been a hard matter to judge who had the better of the Combate: but in the end, the Alman handled him with the white Armes so well, that he began to wax feeble, without making other resistance then to shun the bloud of his enemy: and on the other side, he with the black Armes, knowing well that he had one of the best Knights in the world to deale with, gave him so great a blow with his sword, that made him put his hand to the ground to susteine himselfe: at which the Solitary being very angrie, recharged him so lively, that in less then an houre the field was covered with pieces of his Harness, and the grasse dyed red with his blood: nevertheless he defended himselfe as he which was full of great Prowesse, although he had left but one part of his Sheild, with which he covered himselfe so well as he could: then she saw easily that she had lost her Lover, and that she could not be revenged of him, despairing of remedie, cast her selfe from her Palfrey to the ground, and taking a truncheon of a Lance, said aloud that every one heard her: I have not pleased the Gods, that I live after him which loved me better then himselfe, and finishing these speeches, cast her selfe upon the truncheon, peircing her stomach, that she fell down dead: at which the Solitary was astonished,

knowing

knowing his victorie certaine, said to his enemy: Knight what induced you to enterprize this Combate against me? I did it said he, to fulfill the will of the deceased Damsell, to whom I promised to kill you, or die in the attempt; she is said the Solitary now with God or the Devill, and by her deccase you are acquitted of the Combate: whereof I pray you for the esteeme which I have of you, to tell me your name, and although that he to whom he spake was in danger of death; notwithstanding these speeches having inflamed him so with revenge, that he answered, brandishing his sword: By God I will first trie yet mutable fortune, and rushing upon the other, gave him two such blows that he felt himselfe greatly outraged: at whose choller he marvelled, and said to him: how? what by my head then you shall loose your life, and offcending his armes, if the sword had not turned in his hand he had killed him; but it onely cut the laces of his Helmet: so that it fell from his head: Then knew the Solitary that it was his Uncle *Florestan*, son of the King *Sardinia*: Nevertheless he feigned not to know him, saying: Knight, I will not that you hold your selfe vanquished: seeing you have pursued your enterprize so much as the forces you are accompanied with would permit you: Notwithstanding, I desire you to tell your name: *Florestan* who by reason of the loss of his blood was so much debilitated, that he would hardly speak, answered him, truly Knight, if I have contested more then I ought to have done, thinking not to have found that in you which I had heard to be; but now I finde it too true to my cost, it is the courtesie you have used towards me, not regarding the outrage I have done you, I assure you I am son to the King *Florestan*, and named as my father: Sir said *Lisart*, I have many times heard speak of your great valour, although I would never have believed it to be such, but that I have tried it: therfore I pray you let us remaine friends, at the charge that I will serve you faithfully all my life, Ah said *Florestan*! is it of me you demand mercy? and whilst that they held these graci-

ous speeches, Aleman threw the Knight with the white armes to the ground, and taking off his Helmet, thinking to kill him, saved him for his Nephew *Parmenir*; Aleman very sorrie to see him in that extremitie, said unto him without making any semblance of knowing him; that for the good Chivalrie which was in him, he gave him his life: amongst other discourses the Solitary demanded of *Florestan*, who was the Knight with him, replied he it is my brother, but I pray you who is that Knight that hath vanquished him, he nameth himselfe replide the Solitary the *Almaigne Knight*, and from *Almane* we ran together for companie: then we mounted all foure on horseback, and taking leave one of the other retired our selves: *Florestan* and *Parmenir* to an adjoyning Castle, where they were carefully healed of their wounds, not without much discourseing of the valour of the two Knights whom they had assailed; but because it doth not appertaine to our History leave them; and onely tell you that *Florestan* bore black armes, because *Griliana* was married, as hath been before recited; which did not at all extenuate the affection which she had towards him; for they loved as much as it was possible for any hoping if he lost the name of a husband he should recover that of a friend, and for this cause bore in his sheild a divided hart, as you have heard.

CHAP.

CHAP. XL.

How the Solitary Knight and the Alman traversing the Forest with Alquefa, the son to the Emperor of Rome, sent to pray the solitary to break a Lance with him for the love of Ladies.



*I*svart and *Perion* being separated from *Florestan* and *Parmenir* caused *Alquefa* to look to their wounds, which she did so well, that they did not hinder them from travelling: so that at the end of the wood they met a traine of Knights, and others that belonged to the Emperesse of *Rome*, and the King and Queen of *Sardaigne*, who were then come to visit the King *Amadis*, and Queene *Oriana*. The Emperess was conducted by a Knight armed with white armour, and embelished with rich precious stones, and a bright shining theild with seven letters of B. After her King *Florestan* and Queen *Sardina* marched, and after them the other Ladies and Knights. This Company marched very neere the Solitary, and the Alman and the Knight in the white armes sent a Damsell to the Solitary, to intreat him to doe him the honor to break one Lance with him for the love of Ladies, it being the first day that he had borne armes since he had been Knighted, to which message the Solitary returned answer that he did willingly accept of his offer, if he or some others would lend him a Lance, of which he was at that time unprovided. Don *Florestan* King of *Sardaigne* soone sent him a Lance which he accepted of, and therefore the Knight in the white armes being ready, the Solitary gave spurs to his horse, and the two Knights encountred together: but at their meeting the Solitary lifted up his Lance and he in the white armes encountred him so strongly, that his Lance flew into shivers: then turning his bridle, he said:

saïd: By my God sir Knight, your courtesie is greater then is published, and it is no wonder that your renown increaseth so as it doth, seeing that without touching me, you can so well vanquish me, that for the future you may command me, as he who desires to serve and honor you: Knight answered the Solitary, it is you your selfe who hath vanquished me by your virtue, which is sufficient to subdue the proudest Knight in the world. And therefore I would intreat you to discover your selfe to me: I am saïd he son to the Emperor of *Rome*, and my name is *Pincerpie*. Thus I am forced to leave you to the protection of God to follow the Empreffe. Thus they parted, and the Empreffe and the rest set forwards, in the way to *Femise*, where King *Amadis* sojourned, and the Solitary returned to *Perion* and *Alquesa*, and recounted the discourse he had with *Pincerpie*.

CHAP. XLI.

How the Solitary and the Alman sent Alquesa to King Amadis, and what discourse she had with him.



He Solitary Knight and his Company staid that night in the Forest, and the next morning they remounted on horseback. They had not long travelled when they met a Knight very weary, and his armes tainted with blood: wherefore they asked him where he had been so handled, who told them that he had rescued a Damsell from two Knights, and had killed one, and in pursuing the other he had lost his Squires: they then asked his name, sir said he, I am called *Angriole*, D' *Estrevaux*, and am great Master of King *Amadis* his house, by whose command I am going to *London*, to informe the Knights how to honor and receive the Empreffe *Leonorina*,
he

he would keep open Court at the next Pentecost, and he will then arme the Prince *Adriell*, and one of the sons of King *Norandell* Knights (who lately arived here for that purpose) and therefore I pray you sir, if you meet my Squires shew them the way that I am gone. Then taking his leave of them, he left them displeasent to see him in this danger, for they loved and esteemed him greatly. They travelled not much further before they saw the Knight that *Angriole* had killed, and a villain by him, of whom they asked how far it was to *Femise*, who told them two miles or thereabouts, and said he, I did this day direct a great company thither, and amongst them there was *Agrier* King of *Scotland*, and *Mabila* his wife, who are gone to visit King *Amadis*. So they departed, and the next morning they sent *Alquesa* disguised to the Court, to King *Amadis*, to informe him, that the Solitary Knight according to his promise, at the Castle of the Rock was come to visit him, and did desire to have a Tent without the Town, where the Tourney was to be held, because he and his Companion would not be known, which the King granted unto her with many thanks, and thereupon ordered *Gandalin* to provide a Tent, and every thing necessary, which he did, which being done, she (promising that the two Knights should be there on the morrow) departed and went to the Knights.

CHAP. XLII.

How the Solitary and the Alman requested of the King, to permit them to keep the Feild, against all those who would come to the Joust, and break Lances, for the space of eight dayes.



Lquesa being returned, as you have heard, and having recited the summe of her answer to the two Knights, she presently departed to *Fenuse*, where they were greatly welcomed by King *Amadis*, and the rest of the traine, and in the conclusion, because King *Amadis* did know that the two Knights would not willingly be discovered, and the night drawing on, he gave command unto *Gandalin* to conduct the Solitary, and the Alman unto their Tent, and see every thing provided for them, which he did: and after they had taken their leaves of King *Amadis* and the rest of the Court, *Gandalin* conducted them to their Tent, where they being provided with all things, he left them, knowing that they would not disarme themselves before he was departed. Then they refreshed themselves, and the next evening they repaired to the Court, where they found King *Amadis* discoursing with *Argamont*; but so soon as they came in they left their discourse, and the Solitary Knight approaching neer the King, kneeled on the ground, and said to him so loud that every one could hear: Most puissant and Sovereigne King, the occasion of our coming into this your Countrey, hath been especially to doe you service: and after we had heard of the Court you intend to keep this next Pentecost, we thought good to make one request to you, which we humbly intreat you to grant us: which is; that you permit us to maintaine a Joust for eight dayes, against all

all those that will triethemselves under the condition you shall hear. We will (it so it please you) hang two sheilds such as our own are, on a post, and that Knight that shall touch either of them shall be obliged to joust against us, and I for my part purpose to doe nothing, but what shall be for the honor and service of Madam *Brisenna* your daughter: for so long as I abide in this place (if she pleas to accept of me) I shall and will be her Knight, but none shall call us to combate with the Sword, for what we doe is onely for pleasure: therefore if we be all thrown down we will mount againe, and so joust untill some of us be cast on the ground, and the others remaine in their saddles, and those that doe so remaine mounted, shall be obliged to maintaine these conditions: for the rest of the said eight dayes, and if it happen that one Knight doth dismount us both, one after another: then he shall be obliged to maintaine and continue these Articles for the rest of the said eight dayes. And further if so stands with the pleasure of my Lady *Brisenna*, she shall send for every Knight, that we shall vanquish, the name of that Knight that shall be vanquished, in testimonie that this justice is enterprised by us for her praise and honor. In good faith answered the King, you shall not be referred: but if you think good I will be third: so that if it shall happen that you be both dismounted, then the vanquisher shall be bound to joust with me; and this shall onely be for all strangers. This pleased all the Assembly except *Pinepie*, who was as much discontented as *Brisenna* was joyfull of the enterprize that was done for her sake. *Pinepie* was greatly in love with *Brisenna*, and therefore he bore in his Sheild seven B. as you have formerly heard: and was come purposely from his own Countrey at the report of her beautie. This discourse being ended: *Yguian* son to *Gandalin* had the charge of erecting Scaffolds without the Town, as the Solitary had appointed.

CHAP. XLIII.

How King Amadis being in the Company of many wise men, Olorius Prince of Spaine arrived at the Court to intreat him to give him Knighthood.



As they were thus discoursing together about the enterprise of the Solitary, a Gentleman entred the Hall clad with garments of the cloth of Gold covered with pearls, and rich precious stones: he was faire and of a good stature. In his Company was twentie Knights and as many Squires, and at his arrivall making great reverence to King *Amadis*, he set his knee to the ground and kissed his hands. But the King graciously received him, and asked him who he was. Sirs replied he, my name is *Olorius* of *Spaine*, and I am son to King *Don Brian* your singular good friend, who at my request sent me to you to reverence the order of Knighthood, which I humbly intreat of you to bestow on me, being confident that I cannot receive this honor of a better hand then yours. *Amadis* understanding who he was, kindly welcomed him, and presented him to Queen *Oriana*, and the Empress *Leonorina*, saying to them: Ladies see the King of *Spaines* Son, I pray make him welcome: he then humbly saluted them, and a chaire being brought, the Queen caused him to sit downe. And because the Solitary and the Alman would retire, *Amadis* left him to discourse with the Ladies, to give the good night to the two Knights, untill the next day of Pentecost they came to the Court, it being late and their Helmiets on their heads, because they would not be discovered; and they found the Princess of *Spaine* and *Naples*, and King *Norandells* Son richly armed with white armes, as it was the custome for new Knights. Thus they were conducted to the Church to

watch

watch whither they were attended by the Empress, the Queens *Oriana*, of *Scotland*, and of *Sardaigne*, the Infanta *Brisenna*, and other Ladies and Damselfs, who left them there untill the next morning: when *Amadis* in the company of the two unknown Knights, and many other great Lords, Ladies and Damselfs went to them. Then he gave them the Order, and *Oriana* girded on the Sword of *Olorius*, the Empress Prince *Elinie's*, and the Infanta *Brisenna* *Adariells*. Then soon after the Masse was solemnly celebrated by the Arch-Bishop of *Canterbury*, and from thence they went to the Palace, where the great Hall was hung with much rich Tapestry, which the deceased King *Lisuart* had caused to be made in his time: in the one whereof was described the Combate of *Amadis* against *Aidan Canile*, in the others that of the *Endragus*, the triall of the Arke of Loyall Lovers, the Defended Chamber, the prooffe of the Sword, and the Scarfe with flowers, the cruell battell of one hundred to one hundred betwen King *Lisuart* and *Cildadan* at that time, that *Amadis* lost the name of the faire forlorne, and likewise how he vanquished the two strong Giants *Famongornad* and his son *Barfigant*, who carried the Infanta *Leonor* Prisoner. But the Solitary and the Alman returned to their Tent, where the Infanta *Brisenna* sent them horses and all manner of other provisions, as Cloth of Gold to cover their Sheilds, with which they all did, and so taking their Lances they went unto the place appointed for the Tournie, whether soon after came King *Amadis* accompanied with most of the Lords and Ladies of the Court; they had not staid there long before they saw six Knights very well armed, and mounted, who came out of the Forrest; foure whereof retired, and the other two (having touched the two Sheilds that were placed on the pillars) prepared themselves for the Encounter, which they presently performed so, that their Lances broke into shivers, and they were forced to measure their lengths on the ground: which Fortune likewise happened to the other four onely, the two last ran twice before they left their

D d

horses.

horses. Then there came those who were ordained for the keeping of the Tourney to know their names: but before they arived they had pulled off their Helms: so that they saw the two first to be *Teluis* the Flemming, and *Yrgnian* son of *Gandalin*, the two others *Dragonis* and *Balwir*, and the others *Garnate* of the Dreadfull dale, and *Ambor* of *Gandell* son to *Angrisle D'Estrevaux*. Soon after the *Infanta Brisenna* sent the names of the vanquished Knights according to the agreement, and soon after that fourteen Knights were seen to come out of the wood, and a little while after ten others, who came all to touch the shields; but the two Knights rewarded them all so well, that he soon made them all measure their lengths on the ground. Thus these two Knights (after they had done with these) remained readie to assaile or defend as occasion should happen, untill it grew dark: and therefore the King *Amadis* with all his traine departed to supper, where all their discourse was about these two valiant and victorious Knights.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLIV.

How Urganda came by Sea to Fenuse, and of the fear she put the Town in.



He same night as supper was almost ended, there entred some into the Court to informe King *Amadis* that there was the strangest sight on the Sea that ever was beheld: whereupon the Knights of the Court being somewhat affrighted with this adventure, presently armed themselves, and ran to the Sea-side, in the company of the King, where they saw about a mile of a Mountain of fire in the Sea, and from thence there came so much thunder and lightning that the Inhabitants of the town were greatly frighted therewith: so that they thought it was the judgments of God to punish them for their former sins: wherefore they fell on their knees to ask and implore Gods aid: this Mountaine approached neer the Shoare, and the neerer it came the more the fire went out, and at last all the Mountaine vanished, in lieu thereof they onely saw a great Ship with Apes, and every one of their Apes held a burning Torch, and there was seen twelve Damsels, and in the midst of them sate one Ladie, who was soon known to be their Mistis, and they made the rarest Musick in the world: and this Ladie was soon knowne by *Amadis* and others to be *Urganda*: wherefore *Amadis* having a Skiffe boarded her ship. And then after their usuall manner of greeting, she began to recont unto *Amadis* and the rest the cause of her coming, which she said was onely to doe him pleasure, and partly at the desire of the Sagee *Alquesa* who had lent her that ship with Apes to conduct her thether. Then *Amadis* led her under the Arme unto the shoare, and so into the Town, where she was
D d 2 welcomed

welcomed by *Oriana*, and the other Ladies of the Court. It was late, and above midnight before they had ended their discourse, and *Urganda* prayed the King to let her lodge with the *Infanta Brisenna*, to keep her company, which he consented to: wherefore giving her the good night, she was conducted thither, and every body went to sleep.

CHAP. XLV.

How the two Knights carried the honour of the second, third, fourth, fifth, and sixth dayes of the Tourney.

The day following after dinner, the King and Ladies went to the Scaffolds, to see what would happen to the two Knights in this dayes adventure, where they had not long stayed before there issued twentie Knights out of the wood, who having touched the Sheilds were all soon dismounted to the great honour of the two Knights, and so they continued untill the fifth day of the Combate, still vanquishing all that they encountered with all. Wherefore *Pierpie* and the three other new Knights intreated the King to let them trie themselves against the two Knights, which request the King at last granted, and that evening there arived before the King a Knight, that was armed at all points, except Helmet and Gantlets, who was soon known to be *Sergill*, sometimes Esquire to *Esplandian*, who brought news that the Empress was newly brought to bed of a Daughter, named *Luciana*, and she was so called, because she had a shining Star on her left breast. *Olorius* of *Spain* being at that time present, and hearing hereof did presently resolve to choose no other device but the flaming Star, which he caused to be made against the next day: when he purposed to trie his

his valour. The next day the fourc Knights being entred the field against the Alman and the Solitary, they all jousted bravely, especially *Olorius* who ran eight times without being dismounted, and the ninth time they were both thrown from their horses: when presently fresh horses were brought them, and at the tenth course *Olorius* was cast from his horse, with his saddle between his legs, and that night he dismounted above fourty more, amongst whom there was *Sergil*, *Mareince* and *Garnate* of the Dreadfull dale, *Siontes* nephew to the deceased *Lisuart*, *Listoran*, and many others, whose names I thinke good to omit: Then the *Infanta Brisenna* sent her accustomed messenger, who desired the two Knights to be at supper with the King, which they accorded to.

CHAP. XLVI.

How as King Amadis was risen from Supper a Damsell entred, who brought him a Message from two strange Knights.



At supper was ended there entred into the Hall a Damsell, who soon cast her selfe down at the feet of *Amadis*, who desired him to suffer two Knights who were newly arived in his Countrey, to fight with swords (with the two Knights that maintained the Joust) in the great Hall of his Palace. for as then it was so dark that they could not possibly see to joust within the Lists. Which the King would not grant, unless the two Knights defendants would consent unto it, which they presently did: wherefore the Messenger departed, and soon after there arived two Knights with a most gallant traine, being very rich, and having Heralds with Crownes borne before them: they

soon began their Combate, which was bravely maintained on both sides for above halfe an houre; but a Knight that came in their company had a golden staffe in his hand went between them, and cryed out aloud: Hold Knights, hold, you doe not fight in good earnest, onely in jeast, and to please Ladies: then the Heralds approached, and taking off their Helms placed Crownes on their heads, and Scepters in their hands, and he with the Golden staffe was soone known to be *Perion* of *Sobradise*, and the two Asailants were *Galasie* and *Pintiquinestra*, and the first that began to dance was *Manly* the Sage: All the others were black and white women, which spectacle made the King and all his traine to laugh heartily. And the two Knights *Perion* and *Lisuart* went to excuse themselves for fighting with the Ladies. The King *Amadis* kindly welcomed them, and they related unto him the cause of their coming to his Court, which was onely said they to visit your Majesty, *Madam Oriana*, and your daughter *Brisenna*, together with this your honourable Court. In good faith my friends said the King, you have done me much honour and pleasure, and I thanke you with all my heart. *Pintiquinestra* was at that time so faire, and of so good a favour by reason of a vermillion colour which was mounted in her face, that there was none in the company, but did judge her more worthy to force men at a Combate between two Courtaines, then to handle the Armes of *Mars*: for what dexterity soever she had to aid her in a Combate, or in the field, that of *Venus* was much more proper, and peculiar to her.

CHAP. XLVII.

How the two Defendants bore away the honor of the seventh day, and of those that they vanquished.



He next day at the accustomed time which was after dinner, the King Queen and Ladies went all to the Scaffolds where the two Knights jousted with many valiant Knights, as *Perion* of *Sobradise*, and *Manly Gandalin*, *Listoran*, *Bransill*, *Tantiles* the Proud, *Carine* of *Carfante*, *Axtalie* son of *Olivas*, *Bracete* son of *Brandoyvas*, *Garamont* son to the King of *Norewales*, *Brandany* of *Gaule*, and many others whom they vanquished, and after they had unhorsed all these, there came eight others out of the Forest, who were a company with one Ladie and six Damsells, with whom the two Knights jousted, after they had touched the two sheilds on the Pillars; but they were all of them in the end forced to measure their lengths on the ground, after they had first jousted very well; for the eighth Knight who jousted with the Solitary broke eleven Lances, and at the twelfth they met with their bodies with such force, that the Solitary lost one of his strings, ready to fall if he had not laid hold of the neck of his horse; but the other was thrown downe, quite bereft of his fences: but when he came to himselfe, he and his Companions pulled their Helms from their heads, and saluting the King and Ladies, the first that joust-ed was known to be *Galaor* of *Scotland*, and *Arandalie* his brother, the others *Calsegue*, the haughtie, and *Galsary* of *Rome*, the fifth and sixth *Sursie* of *Ireland*, son of King *Cildadan*, who had newly received the Order of Knighthood, and *Angrisle D'Estreaux*, who was newly come from *London*; the seventh was *Quedragant*, and the eighth *Galaor* King of *Sobradise*, all Knights, *Errants* who conducted

ducted *Briolanea*: who with this little traine of women came to visite *Queen Oriana*, and had casually met these Knights. Great was the welcome that King *Amadis* made them. Soone after they saw ten Knights more come out of the Forest, who were all thrown from their horses at the first encounter, and so the night drawing on they left off for this night. Then the King and the Ladies departed, conducting his brother and *Queen Briolana* to the Palace, where they found supper readie, during which time *Galaor* demanded of *Manely* if he knew any news of his two sons *Talanque* and *Garinter*, who answered him that *Talanque* staid in *Californus*, and that *Garinter* had married the *Queen of Listris*, and *Citherea* being a puissant *Queen*, which he had done by the victorie he had had over a Giant in open Battell, the Knight of the Sphere being present. This news greatly pleased *Galaor*, and all the company, and all that evening they had no other discourse, onely a little before they went to bed *Amadis* happened to speak of the Prowesse of the two Knights: who (said he) have done so well these few dayes past, that if they continue to morrow, I shall account them for the best runners at the Lance that ever I saw, and I will know, if it be possible, wherefore they hold themselves thus. But the Solitary and the Alman purposed otherwise: for they intended so soone as they had finished this enterprize to depart from this Country.

CHAP. XLVIII.

How the two Defendants had the honor of the eighth and last day, and of the arrivall of the green Knight who disarmed them, and Amadis himselfe.

YOU have heard how the two Knights behaved themselves the seven dayes; now you are to hear what they did on the eighth. The Masse being celebrated betimes in the morning, they all made hast to the Scaffolds to behold the ioust, where the two Knights unhorsed many Knights, who came in abundance to the feast that was to be holden at Pentecost. A little before evening there issued out of the Forest a Knight in green Armor, who by his armes was known not to have been idle: for they were so battered and broken, that he scarce had any thing wherewithall to defend himselfe: he having made a great reverence to the King and Ladies touched the sheild, and presently the Alman ran against him, and at the first course their Lances flew into shivers; but at the second encounter the Alman was thrown from his horse, and the Green Knight remained unmoved in his saddle: at which adventure all the assembly greatly wondred, and *Amadis* suspected that it was *Esplandian*: yet he held not this opinion long, but armed himselfe so fast as he could; for his minde gave him that he should be forced to encounter with the green Knight. The Alman being dismounted the Solitary prepared for the encounter; but he at the first course was unhorsed, the green Knight onely losing one of his stirrups. Then *Amadis* being armed, and coming unto the Lists, the green Knight received him bravely: so that at their first encounter the King was forced to leave his horses back. Then the Solitary seeing this earnestly desired the green Knight to come to the Combate with the Sword, which

which he at last did, and alighting from his horse, and being covered with his shield, and so they assailed one another, but the green Knight at the first blow that he gave the Solitary cleaved his shield in twaine, at which he being enraged gave the green Knight so great a blow on the Helmet, that there was heard a great thunderclap, and so great a darkness that the two Knights could not be seen: but *Amadis*, and the green Knight remained on horseback, and the green Knight was soone known to be the Sage *Alquif*, which being known the laughter was great, and *Amadis* kindly welcomed him, and above all things desired him to discover who the other two Knights were, which he would not doe by no meanes, excusing himselfe to the King for that particular. They had in this time of the ioust disarmed three hundred twentie assailants, amongst the rest there was *Don Galaor King of Sobradise*, *Olorius Prince of Spaine*, *Pinerpie of Naples*, *Perion Prince Sobradise*, *Prince Elinie Suyssies of Ireland*, Son to King *Cildadon*, *Manchy the Sage*, and his brother *Ambor of Gandell*, *Don Quedrigant of Ireland*, *Angrio le D'Esirevaux*, *Garnate of the Dreadfull dale*, the Earle *Gadalin*, *Lieoran of the white Tower*, *Lisutan of the Silver bridge*, the King *Dragonis*, *Balonir* his brother, *Bransill*, *Pomplante*, *Tantiles the Haughty*, *Carinee of Carsante*, *Atalie of Olivas*, *Branele son of Brandaguas*, *Garamonte son to the King of Normales*, *Useny of Almanie*, *Brandanie of Gaule*, *Talamane his brother*, *Telus the Fleming*, *Amadarie of Bretaine*, *Silvestrie of Hongarie*, *Manchy of Suesse*, *Galporie of Rome*, *Galaor of Scotland*, *Amandalie his brother*, *Galfegne the proud*, *Marcine son to Garnate of the Dreadfull dale*, *Siontes Nephew to King Lisuart*, *Silercie son to Don Grumedan*, *Pintinel of Carsante*, son to *Balays Yrguian son to Earle Gandalin*, *Pilerte of the Vermelin Tower son to Bravor*, and a Spanish Knight named *Sotans*. And by reason that these were better known then the others, therefore I thought good to name them, according to the names that *Brisenna* sent to the two Knights by her messenger, who likewise

wife entreated them to be in the Kings lodging that evening, because she would speak with them, to which they accorded.

CHAP. XLIX.

How by the meanes of Urganda the two Knights were known, and of the marriages of Perion son to Galaor, with Queen Pintiquinestra and the Sage Alquif with Urganda the Unknown.



He Iousts being ended for this day, the King and his traine went to the great Hall of the Palace to supper, where they found every thing ready: then *Amadis* sitting at the table with *Alquif* and *Urganda* desired her to give them some pleasure by her skill, which she promised to doe. Soon after the Alman and the Solitary entred the Hall, who being armed as they were accustomed, went to salute the Company: but there appeared over their heads two hands which had maces, and went to assaile the two Knights: at the first blow that was given, all the Candles and Torches went out, and all the place remained in obscurity: but by chance the false scabbord that was on the sword of the Solitary fell off, and thereby, by vertue of the stones there was so bright a light, that *Lisuart* and *Perion* were both known, who were then without Helmets on their heads: at which adventure every one was exceeding joyfull, especially *Pinerpie*, who untill then had been jealous of *Lisuart*, and *Lisuart* excused himselfe unto *Amadis* and the rest, for his so long time going undiscovered, and *Urganda* desired pardon for her offence: this adventure caused much joy unto all the Court and the Ladies, and the Queen *Oriana* and all the rest came to embrace them. The next day the Queen *Pinti-*

quinesira declared unto *Amadis* in the presence of all the Court the cause of her coming thither, which is (said she) to *Amadis*, to put you in minde of your promise made to me at *Constantinople*, to bestow a husband on me, and one that is of your own Lineage. *Pintiquinesira* having finished her speech, *Amadis* who had hearkned to her discourse made answer that her request was reasonable, and therefore he would indeavor to doethat which should be to her liking: and having often perceived the affection which *Perion* son to *Galaor* had borne unto the Queen, he thereupon asked of him his consent, which he very willingly agreed to, and so concluded a marriage between *Perion* and *Pintiquinesira*, and caused them presently to salute one another in signe of marriage, leaving the perfecting thereof untill the next morning: when the Arch-Bishop celebrated Mass. All the Company was very joyfull of this alliance, especially the King of *Sobrodise*, who, seeing the Sage *Alquis* and *Urganda* coming together with great affection, he purposed to conclude a marriage between them two: wherefore he intreated their consents, which they willingly granted, and so the Marriage rites were performed for them: and *Perion* and *Pintiquinesira* both together.

CHAP.

CHAP. L.

How on the day of St John Amadis being in the Company of many great Lords, the Governour of Sicilia arrived at the Court, leading with him a King and Queen enchanted, and of that which happened thereupon.



He Solemnity of these Weddings continued for the space of eight whole dayes, during which time *Perion* was crowned King, and *Alquis* and *Urganda* having taken their leaves of *Amadis*, and the rest, departed. As the King was one day in the company of many noble men, there entred a Knight clad in mourning his beard and haire being white, and hanging down as low as his girdle, and he carried in his hand a roule of parchment, with Letters in Gold written thereon, and a Knight followed him armed with very rich Armes, having a Helmet made of a polisht Diamond: neer unto this Knight there went a very faire Damsell, having very rich ornaments. She had on her head a Crown garnished with great Emeraulds and Rubies, and she was accompanied with twentie Knights, who had all black armour. He that marched before them all made great reverence to King *Amadis*, and related to him the cause of his coming into his Court, which was to trie, if any of the Knights and Ladies of his Court could finish a most strange adventure, which was this. The Prince of *Sicilie*, whose name was *Alpatracie* was enchanted, together with *Miraminea* his wife, and they could not be disenchanted but by the loyallest Knight and the beautifullest Ladie unmarried in the world: and therefore this old man went into all Princes Courts to trie if he could by any meanes happen on such a Knight, who

whoby combating with *Alpatracie* should conquer him; and such a Ladie who could obtaine the Crown which she had on her head. And the Roll of Parchment that was in the old mans hand was to this effect: The old man having delivered his minde unto *Amadis*, he presently granted unto him his desire, which was to suffer this adventure to be tried in his Court: wherefore there were many Knights that tried this adventure: the first was *Adriell* who was soone vanquished by the enchanted Knight: then came *Pinerpie*, *Olorius*, *Suyssie* of Ireland, *Ambor* of Gantdel, *Marsinie* of the Dreadfull dale *Pintince* of *Carsante*, *Sionter*, *Silercie* son to *Don Grumedan*, and *Fallreste* son to *Bravor*: no sooner had these Knights tried this adventure, but news was brought to the King that three ships had taken anchor at the Port: wherefore he sent presently to know who they were, and they reported that it was the *Infanta Brisenna* daughter to *Don Bruneo* who came to keep her cousen *Brisenna* companie. *Amadis* with his traine went out, and he brought her into his Palaçe where *Trison* was ready, and there soon entred two Knights unknown, who after he had saluted the King and Ladies, went to combat with *Alpatracie*; but they were both after a short fight vanquished, and then they discovered themselves to be *Quedragant* son to *Quedragant*, and *Abies* of Ireland, whose arrivall increased the pleasure of the Company: and *Amadis* inquired of them how they had left the Defended Mountaine: who answered him that King *Norandell* and the Admirall *Frاندalo* had taken truce with the Turks for six moneths, and that in the meane time they had been in search of a Knight called the Solitary; but now they heard of him and found him. In this time the Queen *Calasea* had armed her selfe against the enchanted Knight: but she coming to assaile, he instead of drawing forth his weapon to defend himselfe kneeled downe on the ground: which King *Amadis* seeing he said to her: Madam, I thinke he loves you better then to fight with you. Truly said she I doe beleve it. Then *Perion* of *Gause* advanced to assaile the

the Enchanted Knight: and the Combate lasted for the space of two houres, but in the end he was vanquished: Wherefore *Lisuart* set forwards, and balling on his Lady to aid him, he drew out his sword, but the Enchanted Knight would not draw forth his; but the neerer *Lisuart* approached him the more he fled from him: so it was impossible to overtake him: then *Lisuart* put up his sword in his scabbard, and pursued him so fast as could, but he could by no meanes come neere him, he fled so fast, which they all seeing were abashed at it: and *Friston* himselfe said that he had never seen the like. Wherefore he desired that the Ladies might assay to get the Crowne of *Myraminea*, so the *Infanta Brisenna* began, and following the old mans directions kneeled down before the enchanted Queen, and said to her: Madam, may it please you to give me that Crown whereby you will make me the happiest Ladie in the world? *Myraminea* tooke her by the hands, and took her up, and tooke her and left her in the midst of the Hall, which constrained *Brisenna* to blush with shame, and cousen *Elisenna* came in her stead, who as well as many others were denied; Some were served worse; for she gave five or six such thrusts with her fist against their stomachs that she threw them on the ground, causing great laughter. *Friston* having taken his leave of the King, departed with his Company, being sorry for his no better success. And *Alpatracie* and *Myraminea* remounted into their Charret covered with cloth of Silver: and being followed by twentie Knights armed with black armour, in signe of sadness followed on their way, leaving *Lisuart* much troubled that he could not finish this adventure. In the mean time *Quedragant* kept in the company of the *Infanta Elisena* of whom he was enamoured, and she was as much on her part after she had seen him combat with the Enchanted Knight.

CHAP. LI.

How a Knight came to desire Amadis on the behalfe of the King of Sanvagine, and of the returne of those who were newly come to Court.



He day following there came to the Court a Knight almost as big as a Giant, who being come before the King delivered him a Letter, sealed with foure Seales, wherein was contained as followeth.

Sulpicie King of Sanvagine (by the death of our Uncle Griffant of good memory whom our Gods feed with Ambrosia and Nectar) Grafante and Bostrose our dear and well beloved brethren, doe let the Amadis the King of great Brittain know, that the Gods having given us forces and power, we are resolved to revenge the death of our late deare Uncle; upon this condition we present you the Combate of us three against three of yours whom you shall choose, and if we are vanquished we will then deliver up all the rest of our Countries without ever laying claime thereunto hereafter; but if we doe vanquish your three, then we shall expect that Sarquiles, whom you have left in the Castle of the Rock shall depart, and leave us peaceable possessor of our Country.

The King having heard this Letter, demanded of the Messenger if he had any thing now to say, to which he answered no; but onely he desired to have safety for his Masters, if the Combate were accepted of that they might come

come to the place appointed. *Lisvart* being present desired the King to let him be one of the three, and to suffer him to choose the other two, which the King granted. *Lisvart* choosing his Uncle *Perion*, and *Olerius* of Spaine, and the place of the Combate was appointed to be at *Trebisond* six moneths after that day. These things being agreed upon, the Messenger departed, and the sixth day following *Lisvart*, *Perion* and *Olerius* departed, accompanied with *Alquesa*, *Adariel* and *Elinie*; these Knights had Vermillion Armes: they being on the Sea soon lost sight of Brittain, and the other strange Princes who had been at the Court of King *Amadis*, likewise departed, amongst whom there were the Queens *Pintiquinestra* and *Calases*, who being arived with their husbands in the Isle of *Californus*, found *Ialanque* and King *Garinter*, who were come thither to see them, where after some small stay, *Garinter* made a present of the kingdome of *Jugarte* to *Manchy*: but *Quedragant* who was passionately in love with *Elisenna*, remained in great Brittain, where he soon after married her. And as for the Emperesse of Rome she returned into *Italie*, where being arived, the Emperour dispatched Ambassadors towards *Amadis* with expresse charge, to demand the *Infanta Brisenna* for *Pinerpie*, which the King and *Orians* willingly agreed to, in such sort that she being arived at *Viterbe*, the Marriage was solemnized. Thus *Amadis* remained with very little Companie: so that being one day at the chase he heard a voice, which called Knight of the Green Sword, when he looked about he saw nothing, but soon after he heard himselfe called Gentleman of the Sea, and faire forlorne, and not knowing from whence this voice should come, he heard himselfe called Grecian Knight. By God said he to himselfe, I am much called upon: wherefore he rood on further thinking of the strange mobilities of fortune that had happened to him, and riding on his horse slipt down, and in rising againe he saw a young childe, which seemed so be about three years old, who said to him: *Amadis* what doe you think on so much, I tell you, that one

shall come very suddenly who shall rob thee of what thou hast, and thou and all thy lineage shall die by his hands, he had no sooner said thus, but he vanished, and *Amadis* resolved to reveale this to none, and presently after lighting on his huntsmen which he had left, he returned to the Town of *Fenuse*.

CHAP. LII.

How Lifvart and his Companions were cast by Tempest in to Spaine, and of the succour which they gave to King Don Brian of Moniafte against King Miramamolin.

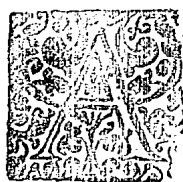


*L*ifvart and his Company being departed from *Fenuse*, the tempest was so great, that they all thought they should perish. And after they had floated on the waves for the space of one moneth and a halfe, their Vessell was cast on the Port of *Carthage*, which being known by the Mariners, they were very joyfull, and thereupon they purposed to stay there untill it should be more calme: wherefore they sent their servants unto the Town to seek Victualls, who being returned, reported to the Knights that they had heard it published from the King of *Spaine*, that all those that could bear armes should within fifteen dayes repaire to the Citie of *Tolette*. And said they had enquired whither they wereto goe, and we were told that *Miramamolin* King of *Marveces* accompanied with ten other Kings, as well *Africans* as *Arabians*, were entred *Spaine*, and have already forced many Cities in revenge of the death of King *Armiato*, and they doe now besiege *Cordove* with very great force. This news being heard by these Knights, they all purposed to aid King *Brian* in the battell unknown, and so if the King had the better to depart

unknown, and therefore they left *Alquesa* in the ship with the Mariners, and went into the Town. And then taking their armes they went towards *Cordove*, and they made so much expedition, that within eight dayes they arived at the Spanish Camp, where they carried themselves as closely as they could, and the Army being come neer to their enemies, the King *Brian* set his Army in readines to assaile his enemies, and so did the King *Miramamolin*: when after they had encouraged their souldiers to fight, and were readie to joyne battell, there arived a Herald from King *Brian* to *Miramamolin*, who said to him: Sir the most mighty and redoubted Prince *Don Brian* of *Moniafte*, my Sovereigne King and Lord sends me to you, to command you to depart his Country, otherwise he is resolved to give you battell without taking any of you to mercy. *Miramamolin* being somewhat stirred up with this Message, answered without delay, Herald, returne to thy Master, and tell him that I am not come hither for that purpose, to returne without fighting, and that I fear not the threats of those whom I make account to vanquish, and that I will have him at my mercy, before it be night yet. But it happened otherwise, for the Herald had no sooner taken leave of him, but they began to skirmish on both parts, and so they continued untill night: when they were forced to leave, hoping to begin the next morning.

CHAP. LIII.

How the two Hosts met, and of the aid which Lisvart and his Companions gave to the King of Spaine.



LI that night the two Camps watched diligently, and about the break of day they dislodged, marching against one another with great fury. *Lisvart* and his Companions had hid themselves, untill they came to break Lances, and then these five unknown Knights entred into the battallion of the *Africans*, which was under the command of the King *Fez*: and at their arrivall they dismounted five of the bravest that they met, which the Earl *Medine* seeing, was very joyfull, and crying *Spaine, Spaine*, entred with his Trooppell-mell, where they were so well received, that on both sides there was thrown down more then a thousand, who never stirred any more. There *Lisvart*, *Perion*, *Olorius*, *Elinie*, and *Adariell* performed marvels, leaving in all places where they came, great testimonie of their great Prowesse, and Chivalry: King *Brian* himselfe acted wonders for the renown of his name and freedome, and good of his Country: so that after a long and terrible fight the Pagans were forced to retreat, their King *Miramamol* being slaine by the hands of *Brian* and *Adariell*, and most of the Giants and Kings of the Pagans being vanquished and killed, the Pagans being put to flight could not run so well, but six thousand of them remained Prisoners, and the rest passed under the edge of the Sword: the night gave an end to the pursuit, and by the darkness thereof the five Knights had good opportunity, and meanes to retire unto an adjoyning Castle, where the Lord thereof honored them, and kindly welcomed them. There they abode untill their wounds were healed: and then they departed to *Carthage*, where *Alquesa* staid for them.

them. But the good King *Brian*, who caused search to be made for them, that night that the battaile was, and seeing that he could by no meanes finde them was much grieved. But *Lisvart* and his Company presently imbarqued themselves, and set saile for *Trebisind*. It happened that eight dayes after they discovered a ship that had the Armes of *Constantinople*: wherefore *Lisvart* commanded his Pilot to enquire who was aboard therein, and answer was made that it was *Gradafiles* and her father, who not having any news of *Lisvart* returned into their Countrie. This answer put the Solitary to a stand, to consider of the evils that he had endured by meanes of the Page: wherefore he would not manifest himselfe, but commanded to passe on.

CHAP. LIV.

How the Vessell wherein Lisvart and his Companions sailed, was cast by storme on the Isle of Apes, where they saw Marvellis, and of the welcome that Alquist and Urganda made them.

THESE two Vessells passing by one another, as you have heard, about midnight the Sea swelled in such manner, that (by the furie of contrarie windes) those who had sailed all their life time were altogether without hope of safetie. But about the dawning of the day they discovered Land, in one of the fairest Islands that ever they saw, where they landed, and taking forth their horses mounted thereon, and left *Alquesa* in a ship, because they did pursue a Villaine that did beat a Damself: they pursued him so far, that they came to a Lake, whereinto he entered, and they could not possible come at him; but the

F f 3

water

water of the Lake began to rise in such manner, that they were forced to flee to the highest Mountaines in the Island, least they should be drowned; but the water arose so much, that they thought that they had been at the end of their lives. And as the water began to move their feet, they heard in the aire a sound, and a song, the most melodious that could be, and they perceived a woman naked, being from the middle downwards in the forme of a Fish, who did sing and play on a Harp, and did swim in the water where she tooke great pleasure. This harmony was so delectable to them, that they forgot the fear of death to hearken thereunto, and fell down asleep (as they thought) being halfe covered with water: nevertheless at their awaking they found themselves in a great Hall, furnished with all manner of pleasant Viands, and every one of them thought his companion to be of Marble, and nevertheless they were so hungred, that they did eat disorderly. They remained in this opinion an houre and more, untill they had slept; at their awaking they found themselves sitting at the Table in their former naturall shapes. Then they saw at the two ends of the Hall two Statues of Alabaster; the one of an old man, and the other of a woman about the same age, each of them holding a great burning Candle in their hands, then there came two Giants who assailed the Statues of Alabaster, and the first stroke that they gave caused such a thunder, that every thing was in obscurity; but the light began soon after to appear, and the five Knights saw instead of the two Statues *Alquis* and *Vrganda* the Unknown: thus their fear was turned into joy, and *Alquis* and *Vrganda* came to embrace them, telling them that they were welcome: soon after came *Alquisa*, who after they had left her landed likewise, knowing that it was her fathers Island, and that her father would feast them before they departed. Then *Alquis* and *Vrganda* led them out of the Hall to see the excellencie of the house, and the Library, where the old man shewed them the Prophecie of *Apolidon*, and that of the Sword, which *Lisuart* conquered

conquered the Invention of the Arke of Loyall Lovers, the strangeness of the Sword, and the Garland of Flowers, how *Amadis* was incanted by *Archelaus* from whence *Vrganda* brought him; the manner how he and others slept in the Firme Island. He likewise shewed them divers books of *Medea*, wherein was contained the Prophecie of *Alptracie* and *Miraminea* incanted, as you have heard. And said he, I knowing the things that have happened unto you this day, and great part of the future, will take the paines to register in writing the adventures that have happened to you, and what shall happen hereafter: for it is not reasonable that they should remaine in the darkness of forgetfulness, nevertheless I am certaine, that after I have chronicled them; there will be a thousand yeares before they will be remembred. But the thousand yeares being passed, yea, fifteen hundred, they shall be published, and your memory shall shine throughout the world. Wherefore the Knights kindly thanked them, and from thence *Alquis* and *Vrganda* conducted them throughout the Island, where they shewed them an infinite number of green Apes, and other Beasts. Then they returned to the Castle, and there they stayed about two dayes. About which time they re-entred their ship, and thanking their Host and hostesse for their kinde entertainment, and weighing anchors they departed, and set saile for *Trebisond*. They had not sailed twentie foure houres before they saw a ship taken by another, and they saw amongst the prisoners Master *Elizabeth*: wherefore they made ready to succour him; and soon after the ships joyned together, and there was a great fight between them; for there was twentie fighting men in the other Vessell, besides Mariners. But *Lisuart* and his Companions soon dispatched most of them, and the rest they took to mercie, and then they discovered themselves to Master *Elizabeth*, who had been sent by King *Amadis* to follow them, fearing that they should stand in need of him. The Prisoners which they took to mercie swore to depart to great Brittain, and declare before King *Amadis* how

how they had been taken, and therefore they let them goe.

CHAP. XLV.

How Lisvart and his Companions arived at Trebifond, and of the welcome that was made them by the Emperor and the Ladies.

After Elizabeth being retaken, as you have heard: they presently set forwards for Trebifond, and they had not sailed long before they arived there. They being arived, Lisvart and Perion took *Alquesa* apart, and they consulted together what they had best to doe in this affaire: at last they concluded that she should goe before to tell *Onolorea* and *Griciletea* of their arivall. Wherefore they advised to tell their Companions that they would send *Alquesa* before, to tell the Emperor that they were in the Port, which they consented unto. *Alquesa* having a Skiffe, in short time took land, and she had not gone far before she met with *Bridelnea*, who being very joyfull to see her, went presently into the Chappell, where the Queen was at Masse, with *Onolorea* and *Griciletea* to informe them hereof, which they knowing came presently forth to see her, she soon told them that their two Knights *Lisvart* and *Perion* were at the Port, and were come to render their service unto them, which caused such joy to the heart of *Onolorea*, that she had almost swooned: they continued in their discourse so long that word was brought to the two *Infantes*, that the Queen was readie to depart: wherefore they left *Alquesa*, having first desired her to remember them to the two Knights, and *Griciletea* having desired her to tell *Perion*, that she desired him to bring his Nephew to the windowes in the Garden,

on

on the next night, they might commune together: so the *Infantes* left *Alquesa*, who presently vvent to the Emperour to informe him of their tidings: when she came before the Emperour, he demanded of her where she had been so long time, to which she answered, and told him all the passages that had happened to her since her departure, and how she had found the Solitary, who was *Lisvart*, son to the Emperor of *Constantinople*, and lastly, how she had brought him and *Perion* together, with three other great Princes unto the Port, readie to come and offer their service to them. This newes was exceeding pleasant to the Emperour, and all his Court, especially to *Onolorea*, who had now heard that her Knight was the Solitary: so much renowned. Wherefore the Emperor desired her to intreat them to come to Court, and the night drawing on, the Emperor bid her good night, and so she departed to the Knights to tell them the effect of her Embassie, who having heard thereof by her could not sleep that night for thinking of their Ladies.

CHAP. LVI.

How the five Knights revered the Emperor, and of the discourse which Perion and Lisvart had with the two Princesses.



He Knights having made themselves ready to goe to the Palace, did set forwards, but they had not gone far, before they saw the Emperor coming towards them in the Companie of the Kings of *Breigne*, the Dukes of *Orlense* and *Alsente*, with many other Princes and Knights. Great was the welcome that the Emperor made to these Knights, and they continued in coming so long together, that they came to the Em-

G g

preis

preſſe and Ladies, who gave them as good entertainment as the Emperour had: if any were glad of this meeting, the *Infantaes* found great cauſe to reioice: but they nor the two Knights could not by any meanes ſpeak with one another, untill it was evening: they paſſed the time away untill it was evening, and then they went to the place appointed them by *Alqueſa*, where they were no ſooner come, but they found the two *Infantaes* in readineſſe to receive them, expecting their comming. The *Infanta Gricilerea* ſhewed very much courteſie to her Knight, and gave him many thanks for his bringing *Liſvart* thither, and *Onolorea* did endeavor to excuſe her ſelfe for her cruelty ſhewed to her Knight, and did now make him part of amends by her gracious and favourable aſpect to him; here they uſed much familiarity, and nothing ſo much grieved them, as the ſo ſoon approach of the day which forced them to part here: at their parting were many ſweet kiſſes and embracings on both ſides, and at laſt the two Knights were forced to leave their Ladies and depart to their own lodgings, where they arived without being perceived.

CHAP. LVII.

How the Emperour of Trebiſond keeping open Court, Friſton with his Company came thither, and how Liſvart and Onolorea put an end to this adventure.



Friſton having traversed many Countries, and been in many Princes Courts: at laſt came to the Court of the Emperour of *Trebiſond*, and there according to his cuſtome, deſired that this adventure might be tried in his Court, whereunto the Emperour conſented, and therefore many Knights tried their valors, hoping to get the victory; but they

they were all vanquiſhed: ſo that there remained none to trie their forces; but *Liſvart* and *Perion*, who would not adventure themſelves, becauſe they had once before done it: then according to the Emperours deſire the Ladies began to trie the adventure, and it happened as bad to them as it had done to the Knights, untill all had done, except *Onolorea* and *Gricilerea*, who purpoſed likewise to trie their fortunes. Then *Gricilerea* advanced, and making great reverence to the Enchanted Queen, ſaid to her: Queen the faireſt that ever I ſaw, may it pleaſe you to give me this Crown? *Myraminea* took her gently by the hands, and inclined her head ſo low to her that ſhe kiſſed her, and then ſhe left her in her place. Wherefore ſhe being ſomewhat aſhamed retired amongſt the Ladies, and *Onolorea* advanced, who looking on *Liſvart* asked the Crowne of *Myraminea*, who taking it off of her own head, and kneeling on the ground, placed it on the head of *Onolorea*, who being glad hereof, would have riſen up, but it was impoſſible, for ſhe could not ſtir, and ſo all the company could not ſtir one jot from the places where they were, at which they wondred. And that which made them the more to wonder was, this *Alpatracie* came neer to the Emperour, and would he or not, took him by the hand and led him out of the hall. And the enchanted Queen did as much to *Onolorea*, and theſe who ſaw it could not ſuccour them: for they could not come neer them by twelve paces. Which *Liſvart* and *Perion* and his Companions ſeeing, they ran haſtily to their armes, and *Liſvart* at laſt came neer the enchanted Knight; but it ſeemed to him that the place was full of armed men who aſſailed him, notwithstanding he at laſt did hit the Enchanted Knight ſuch a blow on the helmet, that there was ſo great a flaſh of lightning and thunder, and darkneſſe in ſuch abundance, that *Liſvart* nor the Enchanted Knight could not be ſeen: and at laſt there was ſeen a Chariot drawn with Adders, who took the Helmet from the head of the Knight, and the enchanted Knight called to *Friſton* his Governor, and ſaid: Go-

vernor returne, if you think good into my Country, and there you shall finde me. And having said thus, the Adders flew into the aire so high that they lost sight of them, and the Emperor remained in Libertie: *Onolorea* being crowned with the Crown of *Miraminea*; and the Adamant Helmet at the feet of *Lisuart*, which he soon tooke up, and beheld the rarities thereof. *Friston* having thus lost his Company, departed to his Country; but before he went he had many faire presents given him, and so he returned into *Sicilie* with less Companie then he came.

CHAP. LVIII.

How a Messenger brought news to the Emperor of Trebisond, that a King of the Savage Island and his two brothers were arived in his Country, to combat with Lisuart, Perion, and Olorius, according to the agreement made before King Amadis.

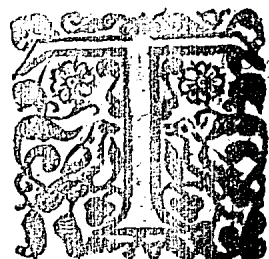
SCarce had *Friston* departed the Hall before a Messenger came to the Emperor, to tell him that the King of the Savage Island was come with his brothers to combat with *Lisuart*, *Perion*, and *Olorius*, and likewise to have the Emperors safe guard, which he soon granted. The next day the Emperor (knowing that the strange Knights were come into his Dominions) sent before the King of *Breigne*, and the Duke of *Ortisenfa* to meet them, who met them and conducted them to the Court of the Emperor, who welcomed them, as also *Lisuart* himselfe did, which the King of the Savage Island perceiving, and knowing *Lisuart* by conjecture, wondered hereat, and seeing him so young, of so faire a Countenance, he told him, that if his three Companions were such as himselfe, he advised them to bring a handkerchief to wipe away the sweat,

sweat, if they should chance to be hot in their harnesses. Those who are my Companions answered *Lisuart* have sometimes abased the pride of as loftie as you are, and behold them both said he (prostrating to them) What (said *Bostrosse* the third brother of the King) have we crossed the Seas thus for to fight with women? as for my part I will have no other weapons but a distaffe to chastise mine. Then said *Lisuart*, you call us women because our faces are fairer, and we are more affable then you are: but you shall finde our hearts high, and our armes strong enough to make you change this opinion. And because the King hath threatned me, this Knight shewing him *Perion* shall combat with *Grasante*; and for you Seignieur *Bostrosse*, *Olorius* who is not to be handled with distaffes, as you boast, but in recompence of the Counsell which you give us, to bring handkerchiefs with us, I advise you to leave nothing behinde you: for all your forces, your bravadoes, glorious and threatening menaces will not be sufficient to save your life. The Emperor knew very well that choller began to reign in them: wherefore he prayed them to leave these speeches to the event of the Combate. During these speeches, *Onolorea* and *Gricilerez* were retired into their Chambers, weeping and lamenting for the eminent perill that was prepared for *Perion* and *Lisuart*; for they had seen the King of the Savage Island, and his brothers, who in their opinion seemed rather to be Devills then men. But *Alquesa* comforted them very well, by telling them how many and dangerous Combats they had had, and had alwayes been victorious. The Emperor the more to honor the Combatants, caused a new field to be railed in, it being a place where they might be seen by much people. The King of the Savage Island sent to the Emperor, to intreat him to suffer *Radiare* Souldan of *Liqua* to be one of the Judges, which he accorded to, and he likewise ordered *Dardarie* King of *Breigne* to be the other. This being done, the three Christian Knights retired into the Chappell, where they watched and prayed, making themselves

themselves ready for death, if it should please the Lord to send it them.

CHAP. LIX.

How Lisvart, Perion and Olorius entred the field, and of the Combate which they had against Sulpicie King of the Savage Island, Garfante and Bostrose.



He night being passed, by break of day the six Combatants prepared themselves to enter the field, and the three Christian Knights entred the field in this manner. The Emperor carried the Helmet of Prince *Lisvart*, and the King of *Bregigne* his strong and tough Lance; the Duke *Orizels* carried *Perions* Helmet, and the Prince of *Alasome* his Speare: The Earl of *Alastre* carried the Helmet of *Olorius*, and *Alarin* his Lance. And in this Equipage they entred in at one of the gates of the field, and the King of the Savage Island with his brothers at the other. Who were armed with black Armes, and their Helmets on their heads and their Lances in their hands. At a Scaffold adjoyning, there was the Emperour and the Emperesse accompanied with *Onolorea Gricilensa*, *Griliana* and *Tiriana*, with many other Ladies and Damselfs. Then *Radiare* and *Dardarie* Judges of the field placed the Combatants one against the other, and the Trumpets sounded, the Herald proclaiming three times that the Combatants should doe their devoir. Nevertheless it was first agreed on between them (according to the advice of the Souldan of *Liquie*) that they should run one after another, to the end that it might the easier be known who did best, and those said he who remaine on horseback shall afterwards alight, that they may pursue their enterprife with their swords.

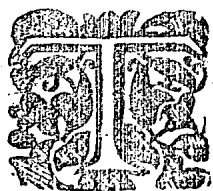
Thus

Thus they all ran against one another in such manner, that they were all dismounted, except *Lisvart*, and *Bostrose*, who were much shaken with the force of the thrust, but they alighted according to the agreement, and there began a most cruell Combate between these six in such manner, that *Lisvart* was at the last in danger of his life, as you shall hear. *Sulpicie* who was his adversarie, thinking to dispatch himselfe of his enemy, gave *Lisvart* so great a blow with his sword on his Helmet of Adamant, that the sword brake in three peeces, and none but the handle remained in the hand of *Sulpicie*, hereupon *Lisvart* found himselfe so charged with the blow, that without the aid of his knee he should have been forced to kisse the ground. Nevertheless he arose up with great nimbleness, and ran against the King, who was without weapons; saying to him so loud that every one heard: King, know now the difference between ill speaking and well doing. yeild thy selfe, or thou shalt die without remedie. What joy now had *Onolorea* which lasted but a little while: for as *Lisvart* thought to cleave *Sulpicie* in twaine, the sword turned in his hand so unhappily, that it flew out, and the King soon got the possession thereof, against the will of him who had threatned him. Then *Sulpicie* said to him, *Lisvart*, *Lisvart*, now I will revenge the death of my Unckles, and carry thy head to the Rock. *Onolorea* more dead then alive, thought that she should have fallen from the Scaffold: but her sister comforted her as well as she could. *Lisvart* then seeing himselfe in this condition losed never a jot of his vertue, but being somewhat desperate ran upon his enemy, and put by the sword with his left hand, and took hold of his choller with his right hand, and then quickly repossessed himselfe of his sword. And said to the King, Vanquished King, thy head shall goe to the Castle of the Rock instead of mine, and having said so, he assaulted him so fiercely, that he quickly cured him of all diseases: and *Olorius* handled his enemy so well, that in short time he likewise vanquished him. *Garfante* who was assailed by *Perion*, seeing his two brothers slaine, became

became faint hearted, in such manner, that he did nothing but recoyle, and in recoyling he fell down backwards: but in falling, *Perion* cut his throat, to the great contentment of *Gricilerea*, and of all the Company: Then the Trumpets and Fifes began to sound, and the Judges came into the field to bring Irish horses to the Vanquishers, whom they conducted in triumph to their Lodgings, where Master *Elizabeth* took them into custody, assuring the Emperor (after he had visited their wounds) that they should soon be healed. In the meane time the servants of the King *Sulpicie* tooke the dead bodies, and with great ceremonie and lamentations embalmed them; and then they set saile for their Countrey, where they finished their funeralls, and the Emperor dispatched a Gentleman towards *Amadis*, to informe him of the issue of the Combate. Wherefore *Amadis* sent *Argamont* for his Lievtenant, and revoaked *Sarquiles*, to whom he afterwards bestowed as many good gifts.

CHAP. LX.

How after the three Knights were healed of their wounds, Lisuart and Perion went to speak with their Ladies at the Garden window, and of that which happened.



He three Knights kept their Chambers one whole month, untill their wounds were closed up, *Alquesa* kept them Company, bringing secret Messages from *Lisuart* and *Perion* to *Onolorea* and *Gricilerea*: for they spake not to them themselves, unless the Emperess was present; but one time they had so much opportunity to speak to them, that the *Infantaes* appointed to meet them at the accustomed window in the garden that night. The time being come that every one went to rest, they

they alone departed out of their Lodgings, and went to the place appointed, and *Lisuart*, and *Perion* obtained to much of their Ladies that night, that they appointed them to come the next night, and against that time the *Infantaes* promised to get a key made to a dore that came out of their Chamber into the Garden, and so they might have the more priviledge to come together, this being agreed, and the day breaking, the two Knights took their leaves of the Ladies, and departed to their Chambers: the next day they passed away in the Company of the Emperor, and when night came they went to the place appointed. The two Knights marched along softly without making any noise: when *Gricilerea* who watched for their coming perceived them: And as they passed on to goe to the window, the two Ladies came out of their ambush, and laying hold of them, said: stay Knights, you are our prisoners. *Perion* and *Lisuart* kneeling on the ground kissed their hands, *Perion* taking *Gricilerea* went apart from *Lisuart*, who holding *Onolorea* imbraced, said to her: Madam, the pleasure which I now have is such, that with too great ease, my heart (which is yours) cannot containe in it selfe the joy which is offered, thereunto, by the sweet entertainment which you please to give me with so much privity, that I am constrained humbly to require of you to pardon my temerity, and excuse my indiscretion. My friend answered she, let us sit down on this grasse at our ease, and seeing that I have so much forgotten my selfe to trust in your goodness, I pray you that this familiarity may require as much respect as if I had been more cruell. But whilst she prepared this honest excuse, *Lisuart* by degrees gained the possession of her lips and breast, and being about to passe further: Ah my friend said she, content your self to take as much of me as I my selfe can command, which is to see and to touch my person, without your taking the paines to bereave me of that, which you, nor no other know how to render to me. Madam, answered he, you know the time that I sailed in this Sea of Love, and now that I am ready

to enter into the sweet Haven of mercy: for Gods sake doe not hinder me. My friend said *Onolorez*, will it not suffice you that I am yours, and content your selfe with the exterior, which is the proper fruit of Lovers, without desiring a pleasure which is so soon passed, and which brings (as is said) nothing but sadness. But so much the more she professed these excuses, the less she perswaded *Lisuart* to give credit to her, but letting loose the bridle to his passions; he cropt the first flower of her Rose, which was found to be a thorne. In this time *Perion* and *Gricilera* did their work at leasure. I know not, if they had such Covenants, it is very true that the end of the sport turned to promises and oathes to returne on other nights to the same place, a witness of so happie sport: in which they exercised themselves a week together, without being perceived or discovered; no, not by *Alquesa*, although she knew of most of their private affaires: but of this she was ignorant.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXI.

How the Emperor and Perion hunting in the Forrest found a Damsell weeping, and of that which happened.



He Emperor (being a most affable Prince, not knowing what pleasure to give to the three Knights who had been lately healed of their wounds) purposed one day to goe hunt in the adjoining Forest, and therefore he sent his hunters to make preparations. And as they were in the heat of their sport, the Emperor and *Perion* being together, there came forth a Bear, which they pursued so much that they killd it, and they heard a most dolorous voyce towards the sea-side: wherefore they advanced thitherwards, and there they saw a Damsell pitifully lamenting, and a Knight lay by her dead, and doe *Perion* and the Emperor what they could, they could not cause her to leave her lamentations: then they were very desirous to know her misfortune: alas sir Knight answered she, let me alone, or promise me one gift, and I will recount unto you what you desire to know. *Perion* being ready to promise soone agreed to her: Then seeing it so said she, arme your selfe with the Armes of this dead Knight who is my Father, and follow me unto an Island foure miles from hence, where the Rascal that killed my Father promised to stay, untill I bring one to fight with him. *Perion* being willing to pursue this enterprise armed himselfe, and entred into a Barque that was there adjoining, and the Emperor went along with him to bear him Company. Then the Damsell made such speed, that they soon lost sight of land. We will leave them here untill another time, and returne to the others who hunted in the Forest, who having much venison, and seeing the night approach used great diligence to finde the Emperor

H h 2
and

and *Perion*. Yet they could hear no tidings of them; but a certaine foot-boy told them that he had seen them pursue a Bear, and he shewed them the way that they went, where they found the beast dead: but they could hear no tidings of the Emperor nor *Perion*, but onely they found their horses unbridled: then they being at the Sea-side saw a Skiffe, wherein there was two Damsells, then *Lisuart* courteously saluted them, and said to them, Damsells, I pray you tell us news (if you knew any) of two Knights, the one very old, and the other as young. Doe you speak (said they) of the old Emperor of *Trebisond* and of he who accompanies him? yea truly said *Lisuart*, I pray you tell us what is become of them. If you have a desire to finde them said they, enter with us and we will conduct you towards them, upon condition that you grant us one boone, otherwise hold your selves assured that they are lost, and you shall not finde them in a long time. *Lisuart* who desired to serve the Emperor for the love of his Ladie, willingly granted them what they required, demanding of them if he might carrie more company. No answered they, unless it be one. *Olorix* was present, who earnestly entreated *Lisuart* to let him accompany him, which he granted him: in such manner, that they two being entred into the Barque, we will leave the King of *Breigne*, and the rest on the land.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXII.

How the Emperor and Perion of Gaule were arrested by the treason of the Damsell which conducted them.

NOW we will returne to the Emperor and *Perion*, whom the Damsell conducted, as you have heard; after they had sailed untill Sun set, they took Port in a little Isle, where there was two great Tents erected: at the entrance of one there was a Ladie, with a Knight armed at all points, whom the Damsell shewed to *Perion*, saying: Sir Knight, behold him with whom you must fight, and who hath by great treason killed my Father, Damsell answered he, I promise you that I will revenge him if I can. Then they three issued out of the Barque, and soone after the Knight aduanced, who asked of them whether they went, and what they searched for. Knight answered *Perion*, you have promised this Damsel to stay here, untill she should bring a Gentleman to fight with you, and revenge the death of her Father, whom you have murdered. And well said the other, what of that? nothing said *Perion*, but I will onely have your life in recompence of his. In good faith said the Knight, your enterprise is folly, and I will chastise you before you escape my hands. Having said thus he laid hands on his sword, and *Perion* did so likewise: when holding forth his shield to defend himselfe from the blow of his enemy, his shield was cut in twaine, and he striking the Knight one blow his sword broke in three peeces. Rascall said the Knight, now shall your head be lodged in the place where you enterprized to place mine. *Perion* seeing his extreame danger, ran upon him with great courage, and took hold of his choller, but there issued six great slaves out of the Tent, whereof four seized on *Lisuart*, and two on the Emperor, whom they

H h 3 suddenly

suddenly chained. Then the old woman knowing the Emperour said to him : Wicked Emperour , seeing that you are now in my power, I will make you an example to all others, who goe about to hurt the friends of *Armato*, and now I will revenge the death of him, and many other great Lords which you were the cause of. Lady answered the Emperour, I know not what you speak of : but there was never so great treason as this, which you have used unto us.

CHAP. LXIII.

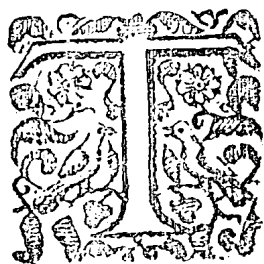
How Lisvart and Olorius were taken prisoners by the same parties that staid the Emperour and Perion.

Lisvart and Olorius had hardly put to Sea before the night overtooke them : Nevertheless they left not sailing untill they arived at the Island where the Emperour was, and there they landed. One of the Damselfs counselling them to repose on the grasse untill day. Which they agreed unto : nevertheless, a little while after they demanded of *Lisvart* if he remembred the boon which he had promised them. Yea truly answered he, follow me then said the younger, and I will tell you apart what it is : for I would not have any know it besides us : It was then very darke, nevertheless *Lisvart* and she walked together, and the Damself feigning to be weary, prayed him to sit down on the grasse, and talke together, which he agreed to, not doubting of what after happened : for the false quean took him behinde as he was stooping, and throwing him down took his sword from his side, and running away, cried help me, knights help me, help me : *Lisvart* being astonished to see himselfe thus deceived, ran after her as fast as he could : but he

he was soon stopt by seven Knights who were in ambush who surprizing him, carried him away to the place where the Emperour and *Perion* were chained. Then he knew that there was treason : for they soon put great Irons on his legs, which grieved him to the heart , and as he stoopt he gave one of the Villaines such a blow on the mouth, that he broke out four of his teeth. In the mean time the cries of the Damself came to the ears of *Olorius* , who was a discoursing with the other, and he went towards the Pavillion to see what was the matter. But in entring he saw *Lisvart* the Emperour, and *Perion*, in that estate that I told you. Wherefore being moved to anger, he laid hold on his sword, and without regarding the danger he was in, he cleaved the first that he met to the ears, and he did as much to the second : then he came to the third, against whom *Perion* had combated, and the first blow that he gave, his sword broke to his fist. Then he saw well that he could no longer resist : for he was encompassed so on all sides, that he was taken and bound as the others were, who were carried neer the Sea, and there they were separated, and put into divers Vessells, without knowing whither they were carried, nor wherefore they were so illy handled.

CHAP. LXIV.

How the Empress was advertized that the Emperour Perion, Olorius, and Lifvart were lost, and of the sadness of Onolorea and Gricilerea, when they found themselves big with child.



He King of Breigne, *Adariell*, *Elinie* and the rest were much grieved, having so unfortunately lost the Emperour, and seeing that *Lifvart* did not returne, neither as he had promised, these three therefore purposed not to returne into the Towne without knowing further news of them.

And therefore finding a small ship fit for their purpose, they embarqued, praying the Dukes of *Ortilensa* and *Alafonte* to returne to the Emperesse, and declare unto her this great misfortune, which being understood, many Knights entred in search of him, and traversed so many strange Countries, that *Greece*, *Thrace*, *Almanie*, *Italie*, *Great Brittain*, and *Gaule* were advertized thereof; for which cause there were many sad hearts; but this was nothing in respect of the two *Infantaes*, *Onolorea* and *Gricilerea* who entred into so great Melancholly, that they were weaker and weaker every day, and their great bellies did help them to be more weak: now paying use for the pleasure, which they had sometimes received in the garden with *Perion* and *Lifvart*. They had carried themselves so prudently in their loves, that none had perceived them, and the Emperesse her self thought that their debility proceeded from the losse of their father: wherefore she comforted them with certaine hope, that by the aid of our Lord he would shortly returne. This was not the right point that troubled them most, but the little child which they perceived to move

in

in their bellies. Wherefore she obtained leave of the Emperesse to dwell a little while in the monastrie of *Sophie*, which was neer thereunto, and the sister of the Duke of *Alafonte* was *Abbesse*, and they would have no women with them, but onely *Sirrense* and *Garinde* daughters to their nurseries, in whom they had much confidence, and there they staid as covertly as they could, untill the time that they should be delivered. Then they discovered all to *Sirrense* and *Garinde*, who thought fit that the Children should be carried to the Port Town called *Filine*, where they should be nursed by the mother of *Garinde*, as if they were hers. *Onolorea* was the first that was delivered of a fair son, which was wrapped in rich clothes, and given to her mother to kis, who in tears gave it her blessing. And recommending it to the keeping of our Lord, she prayed *Garinde* in baptizing it to give it the name of *Amadis de Greece*, in favour of King *Amadis* his great Grandfather, and the Emperour *Esplandian*. This being done, the Damsell departed by a back dore with the childe, over a wood to *Filine*; but the little Creature was so feeble, that *Garinde* thought it would die, and therefore ariving neer a Fountaine she put it in the water, saying these words: Little child receive the name of *Amadis de Greece*. She had scarcely ended these words, and thrown the water on his head, when she heard the noise of a people coming directly to her: wherefore being surprized with fear, leaving the Child, she ran into the thickest of the woods to hide her selfe. And knowing that these were Rovers, Black-Moores, who came to the Fountaine to get freth water, where seeing little *Amadis* in rich Cloathes, they were marvellous glad, and much more abashed when they saw that he had brought from his mothers wombe a Sword, of a Vermillion Colour, the Pomell whereof was on the right knee, and the point right at his heart. And there was upon it certaine Characters, or Letters, white as snow, which they could not read nor understand: wherefore without looking on him any further,

I i

they

they wrapped him up, and carried him into their ships; where by good fortune they had women, amongst whom one named *Esquizez* newly brought to bed, had the charge to nourish this little *Amidis*, whom they called the Gentleman of the flaming Sword. In the mean time *Garinda* somewhat assured returned to the place where she had left him, but not finding him there, she thought that Beasts had devoured him, for which she was extreemly sad, nevertheless she purposed not to tell *Onlarez* hereof: but to tell her that she had left it in the towne of *Filins*, and so she did at her arrivall, when she found *Gricilerez* delivered of another fair son, whom she called *Luceneir*. These two triumphed in their time, as you shall heare at large, if God and the time permit, in the seventh and eighth Books, where their Deeds and Chivalries are amply recited, with as much grace as any book or Chronicle that was ever published. And thus we will make an end of our present work.

The end of the sixth Book.
